

Formula

italiano

2

Nadia Civa

Miriam Rawson

Amelia Short

Joseph Millimaci

PEARSON



Formula

# italiano

2

Nadia Civa

Miriam Rawson

Amelia Short

Joseph Millimaci



ALWAYS LEARNING

PEARSON



Formula

# italiano



**Nadia Civa**

Miriam Rawson

Amelia Short

Joseph Millimaci



## Pearson Australia

(a division of Pearson Australia Group Pty Ltd)  
707 Collins Street, Melbourne, Victoria 3008  
PO Box 23360, Melbourne, Victoria 8012  
www.pearson.com.au

Copyright © Pearson Australia 2010  
(a division of Pearson Australia Group Pty Ltd)  
First published 2010 by Pearson Australia  
2017 2016 2015  
10 9 8 7 6

## Reproduction and communication for educational purposes

The Australian *Copyright Act 1968* (the Act) allows a maximum of one chapter or 10% of the pages of this work, whichever is the greater, to be reproduced and/or communicated by any educational institution for its educational purposes provided that that educational institution (or the body that administers it) has given a remuneration notice to Copyright Agency Limited (CAL) under the Act. For details of the CAL licence for educational institutions contact Copyright Agency Limited (www.copyright.com.au).

## Reproduction and communication for other purposes

Except as permitted under the Act (for example any fair dealing for the purposes of study, research, criticism or review), no part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, communicated or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written permission. All enquiries should be made to the publisher at the address above.

This book is not to be treated as a blackline master; that is, any photocopying beyond fair dealing requires prior written permission.

Publisher: Ada Lanzaro

Editor: Daniela Russo

Cover designer: Miranda Costa

Text designers: Miranda Costa and Paul Ryan

Copyright & Pictures Editor: Michelle Jellett

Project Editor: Carlie Jennings

Development Editor: Sonia Davoine

Language Consultant: Eleonora Pessina

Proofreader: Carolyn Glascodine

Production Controller: Claire Henry

Cover art: Shutterstock

Illustrators: James Hart, Marty Schneider, Colby Heppell and Bruce Rankin

Printed in Australia by the SOS Print + Media Group



National Library of Australia Cataloguing-in-Publication entry

Formula italiano 2 student book / Nadia Civa ... [et al.].

ISBN 978 0 7339 9216 2 (pbk.)

For secondary school age.

Italian language--Textbooks for foreign speakers--English.

Civa, Nadia.

458.2421

Pearson Australia Group Pty Ltd ABN 40 004 245 943

## Acknowledgements

We would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce copyright material.

The following abbreviations are used in this list: t = top, b = bottom, l = left, r = right, c = centre.

AAP: p. 67.

Alamy Ltd: pp. 23, 30, 41, 42t, 62br, 77b, 79 (bus stop and pastry shop), 80l, 82bl, 83t, 84, 85, 86l, 86c, 86r, 102r, 102c, 138t, 158, 173t, 177.

Civa, Nadia: pp. 120tl, 120ct, 120cb, 120br, 127 (Colosseum), 133br, 133bl, 138b, 143, 155, 161b.

Corbis Australia Pty Ltd: pp. 1, 37r, 47, 97bl, 144, 174b, 175tl, 178tl.

Dreamstime: pp. 5, 29t, 29b, 41 (weather icons), 44b, 50, 101 (perfume, CD, necklace, wallet, chocolates and camera), 105b, 129, 127 (dice).

Getty Images: pp. 27l, 27r, 37l, 48l, 48r, 97br, 101 (vase), 104b, 105t, 178bl.

iStockphoto: p. 33.

Lancaster, Kate: pp. 79 (church), 120tr, 111l, 115b, 172b.

Pearson Australia: Ada Lanzaro, pp. 12, 44t, 79 (pharmacy, ATM, supermarket, post office and hotel), 102l, 103, 161t; Alice McBroom, p. 104t.

Photolibary Pty Ltd: pp. 111r, 156b, 165, 172t.

Picture Desk, The: pp. 173b, 174t, 175tr.

Shutterstock: pp. 7, 19, 34, 42b, 55, 61, 62tl, 62cl, 66l, 66tr, 66br, 68b, 71t, 71c, 71b, 73, 77c, 77t, 78, 79 (pizza, station, statue, ice-cream and hospital), 83c,

91 (models and motorbike), 97tr, 101 (watch, books, mask, MP3 player and tickets), 104c, 114, 115t, 120bl, 122t, 122c, 122b, 133t, 133c, 142, 147, 156t, 157t, 157b, 176t, 176b, 178br.

Every effort has been made to trace and acknowledge copyright. The publisher would welcome any information from people who believe they own copyright to material in this book.

## Disclaimer

The selection of Internet addresses (URLs) provided for this book was valid at the time of publication and was chosen as being appropriate for use as a secondary education research tool. However, due to the dynamic nature of the Internet, some addresses may have changed, may have ceased to exist since publication, or may inadvertently link to sites with content that could be considered offensive or inappropriate. While the authors and publisher regret any inconvenience this may cause readers, no responsibility for any such changes or unforeseeable errors can be accepted by either the authors or the publisher.

# Contents

|                      |      |
|----------------------|------|
| Series features      | vi   |
| How to use this book | viii |
| Map of Italy         | x    |

## 1

### Pronto! Chi parla? 1

You will learn how to:

- talk to people on the telephone
- use the verb **dovere**
- ask for and tell the time
- talk about your daily schedule using reflexive verbs
- identify computer and Internet terminology
- give orders and commands using **l'imperativo**.

## 2

### Mamma mia! Quanti messaggi! 19

You will learn how to:

- use some common Italian expressions
- identify Italian film genres
- talk about your favourite things using the adjective **preferito/a**
- use the various forms of the adjective **quello**
- use the irregular verbs **dire**, **venire** and **uscire**
- use the prepositions **da**, **di**, **in**, **a**, **con** and **per**
- write emails and text messages in Italian.

## 3

### Volete ascoltare la musica? 37

You will learn how to:

- talk about the weather
- ask for and give the date
- use the verbs **potere** and **volere**
- offer, accept and decline invitations
- talk about music and use the verb **suonare**
- use conjunctions and interrogatives to make you sound more fluent.

# 4

## Salviamo la terra!

55

- You will learn how to:
- use the verbs **sapere**, **conoscere**, **dare** and **preferire**
  - talk about the environment and ecotourism
  - compare different things, qualities and actions
  - use articulated prepositions
  - identify and discuss extreme sports
  - use Italian gestures as linguistic short cuts.

# 5

## In giro per Venezia

73

- You will learn how to:
- buy a Venetian water-bus ticket
  - identify some significant aspects, events and people associated with **Venezia**
  - understand, ask for and give directions
  - identify key places on a map
  - use the singular familiar (**tu**), singular formal (**Lei**) and plural (**voi**) of **l'imperativo negativo**
  - order and buy some food
  - express likes and dislikes for food.

# 6

## Made in Italy: i prodotti italiani

91

- You will learn how to:
- describe things and people using the superlative
  - say 'some/any' using the partitive **di**
  - use Italian words and phrases to shop for presents
  - recognise Italian shops and products
  - use numbers greater than 100
  - avoid repetitions by using direct object pronouns.

# 7

## Il mare e la montagna: la geografia d'Italia

111

- You will learn how to:
- talk about past events and experiences using the past tense (**il passato prossimo**)
  - use **essere** with certain verbs to form **il passato prossimo**
  - recognise Italian geographical features
  - use adverbs to express how and how often you do activities
  - understand what dialects are and why they exist in Italy.

## 8

## Firenze: la città d'arte

129

You will learn how to:

- recognise the significance of **Firenze** and the cultural revolution of the Renaissance
- express **il passato prossimo** with reflexive verbs
- use **avere** to form **il passato prossimo**
- use irregular past participles
- identify three important Italian personalities—Leonardo da Vinci, Dante Alighieri and Galileo Galilei.

## 9

## Cosa facevano gli antichi romani?

147

You will learn how to:

- form and use the imperfect tense (**l'imperfetto**) to describe the past
- talk about the past using **il passato prossimo** and **l'imperfetto**
- recognise key events in Italy's ancient history
- plan for an Italian-style party
- identify Italian food stores
- form diminutives with nouns to indicate size.

## 10

## Arrivederci Roma...

165

You will learn how to:

- form and use the future tense (**il futuro**)
- talk about Italian cinema
- use the pronoun **ci**
- talk about future plans and occupations using **il futuro**
- identify and use double negatives
- compose a thankyou note.

Key grammatical terms 183

Verb tables 184

Italian–English wordlist 186

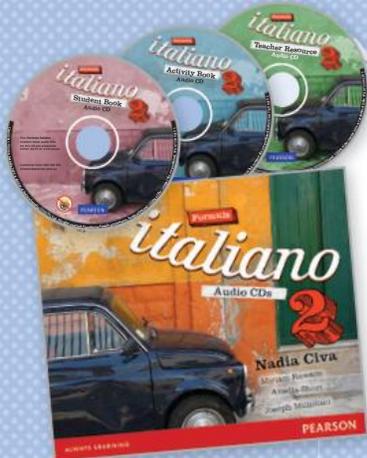
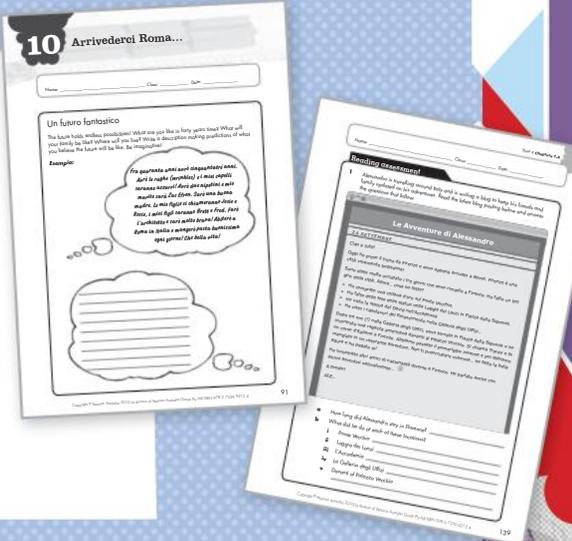
English–Italian wordlist 192



## TEACHER RESOURCE

The teacher resource consists of a range of materials designed to support both the student and teacher in the classroom and at home. It includes:

- worksheets and homework sheets
- tests (also available in Word from the Teacher Resource Centre through the Teacher Lounge on Pearson Places)
- checklists
- solutions to all student activity book activities.



## AUDIO CDS

The audio CDs provide high-quality recordings of the dialogues and listening activities in the student book and activity book, as well as the listening components of the tests included in the teacher resource.

The dialogues and listening activities have been recorded with native Italian speakers, at a pace suitable for beginner learners of Italian.

## PEARSON PLACES



**Pearson Places** is the gateway to digital learning material for teachers and students across Australia. Sample the range of resources and register for free at [www.pearsonplaces.com.au](http://www.pearsonplaces.com.au).

Each student book in the **Formula italiano** series is supported by its own Companion Website through the Student and Teacher Lounges on **Pearson Places**.

### Student Lounge

Our Student Lounge contains engaging supplementary material for students, including:

- web destinations for each chapter, with a brief description of the content of each website
- drag-and-drop activities, to consolidate new learning and vocabulary
- chapter review quizzes with hints and explanations, automatic feedback and an email facility.

### Teacher Lounge

Our password-protected Teacher Resource Centre contains teaching programs, audio scripts and editable tests in Word. It can be found through the Teacher Lounge on **Pearson Places**.



# How to use this book

*Formula italiano 2* student book has been written and designed for students continuing to learn Italian after completing the introductory course of *Formula italiano 1*. It has an even focus on listening and speaking, reading, writing and viewing to create an engaging and practical approach to learning Italian.

This student book consists of chapters with the following features:



Chapter opening pages include learning outcomes for the chapter and a photo relevant to the themes of the chapter. Chapter content follows the sequence of these outcomes.

Cartoon storyboards appear in all chapters. These follow the adventures of the main characters and introduce some of the key language to be found in the chapter.



Audio icons indicate where the audio recordings are linked to content. The audio is available on the student CD found in the front of the book, or on the *Formula italiano 2 Audio CDs*.

Activities appear regularly through a chapter, giving students opportunities to apply knowledge and skills. This continual reinforcement allows active consolidation of learning.



**Investigazione linguistica** sections provide specific information on aspects of grammar and language introduced in the chapter.



**Investigazione culturale** sections represent detailed cultural information about Italy, presented in context.



**Glossario** lists provide an easy reference for newly introduced language with English translations.



**Tocca a te!** are speaking activities performed with a partner or individually. These promote students' confidence in speaking, and generate fun at the front of the classroom!

The **Handy hint** feature provides helpful strategies and tips for students.

Handy hint

**Cosa pensi?** sections contain questions that challenge students to think about and discuss their learning. Students are encouraged to make connections with, and reflect on Italian language and culture.

Cosa pensi ?

**Pearson Places** icons indicate where activities are available for students on the *Formula italiano 2* Companion Website through the Student Lounge on **Pearson Places**. The text around each icon indicates the type of activity that is available.



**Ripasso** are revision sections that give students an opportunity to demonstrate their understanding of the outcomes listed in the chapter opening page.

Ripasso

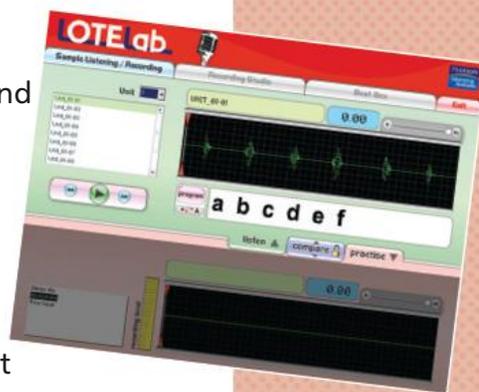
**Riassunto** sections contain vocabulary and grammar lists based on the chapter opening page outcomes. These are handy for reinforcing key language. They are also useful for homework or for study before tests.

Riassunto

## Don't forget!

There are great interactive activities on the student CD found in the front of this book:

- Practise your Italian against that of a native speaker. Remember: practice makes perfect!
- Record your own Italian for classroom presentations, assessment or fun.
- Create your own music using the samples given, or import your own samples. Play your song and then record your own lyrics over the top of it.



# L'Italia



GERMANIA  
AUSTRIA  
SLOVACIA  
LIECHTENSTEIN  
SVIZZERA  
UNGHERIA  
SLOVENIA  
CROAZIA  
SERBIA  
BOSNIA-ERZEGOVINA  
MONTENEGRO

TRENTINO-ALTO ADIGE  
FRIULI-VENEZIA GIULIA  
VENETO  
LOMBARDIA  
EMILIA-ROMAGNA  
LIGURIA  
TOSCANA  
MARCHES  
ABRUZZO  
MOLISE  
PUGLIA  
CALABRIA  
SICILIA  
SARDEGNA

Il Lago Maggiore  
Il Lago di Como  
Il Lago di Garda  
Il Po  
L'Adige  
L'Arno  
Il Tevere  
mar Ligure  
mare Adriatico  
mar Tirreno  
mar Ionio  
Mediterraneo

Aosta  
Torino  
Milano  
Genova  
Bologna  
Firenze  
Perugia  
L'Aquila  
Campobasso  
Bari  
Potenza  
Catanzaro  
Palermo  
Etna

Trento  
Venezia  
Trieste  
Ancona  
Lazio  
Roma  
Città del Vaticano  
Napoli  
Vesuvio

Le Alpi  
Le Dolomiti  
Gli Appennini

FRANCIA  
CORSICA (FRANCIA)  
Isola d'Elba

0 100 200 300 km

N

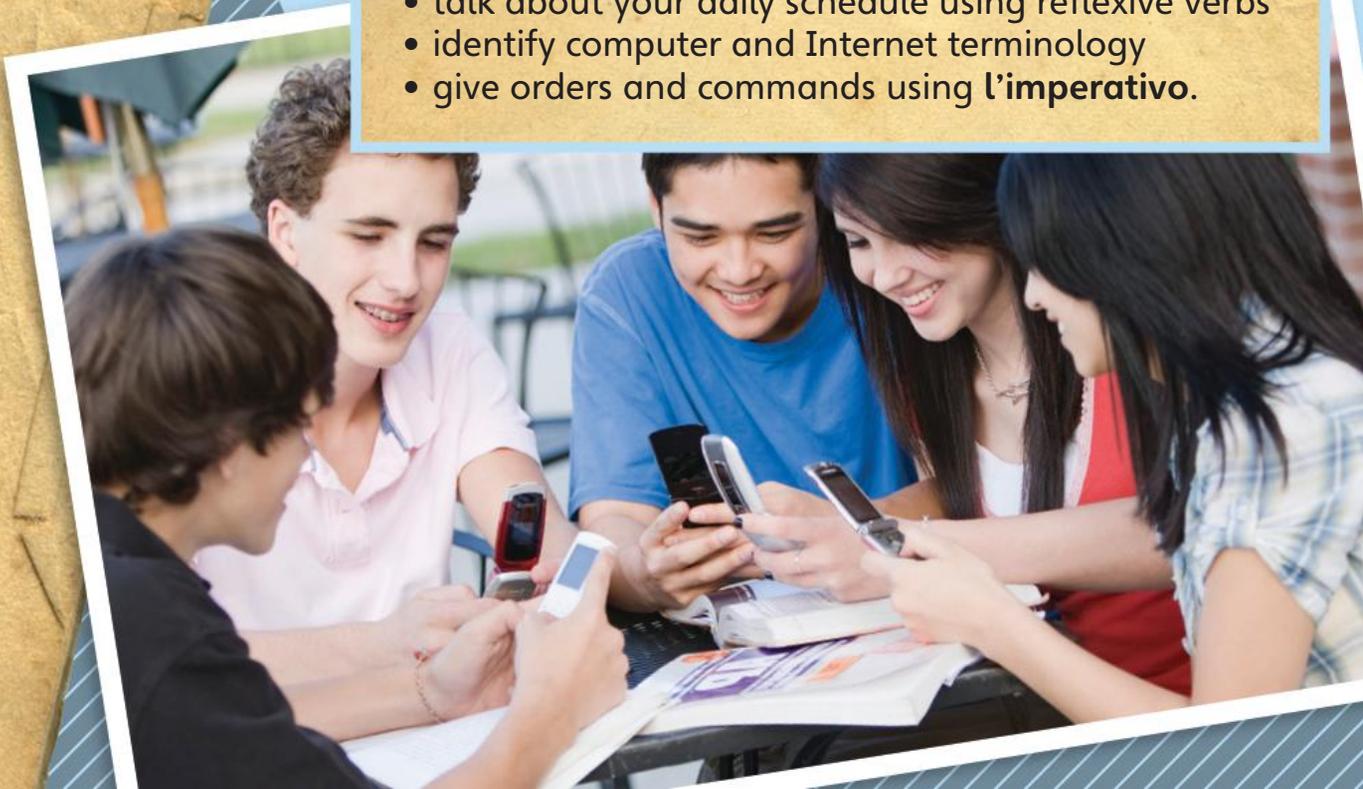
KEY

- Montagne (Mountainous areas)
- Fiumi (Rivers)
- Laghi (Lakes)

# Pronto! Chi parla?

## You will learn how to:

- talk to people on the telephone
- use the verb **dovere**
- ask for and tell the time
- talk about your daily schedule using reflexive verbs
- identify computer and Internet terminology
- give orders and commands using **l'imperativo**.



# Amici tecno



Nathan, one of the Australian **Atletitalia** competition winners on tour of Italy, is relaxing in his bedroom on a Saturday, when Roman tour guide Alessandro calls him to confirm a get-together.

**1** Pronto! Chi parla?

Ciao Nathan! Sono Alessandro. Cosa fai?

**2** Ah, ciao Alessandro! Sono in camera e mi riposo un po'. Ascolto la musica sul mio lettore MP3.

Bene. Senti, ci vediamo a casa tua alle cinque per navigare su Internet?

Certo! Ci vediamo dopo!

**Più tardi...**

**3** Ciao amico!

Ciao! Sei in anticipo. Sono le cinque meno un quarto. Vieni vicino al computer. Controllo il mio sito ilMioSpazio.

**4** ilMioSpazio? Fico! Cosa hai sul sito?

Ho il mio orario. Guarda... mi alzo alle sei e quindici... mi lavo alle sei e mezza... mi vesto e mi lavo i denti... e vado a scuola alle sette.

Devi essere molto organizzato!

**5** E questa è la foto di Diana. Lei abita nell'appartamento al quinto piano.

Che bella!

Sì, mi piace da morire!

**6** Clicca qui. Questa pagina mostra tutte le mie cose preferite. Guarda, la mia attrice preferita è Kristen Stewart, il mio gruppo preferito è AC/DC...

... il tuo cantante preferito è Justin Timberlake? Scherzo!



7 Accidenti! Sono in ritardo! Devo incontrare Diana in piazza alle cinque e mezza. Devo scappare!



D'accordo, divertiti! Adesso controllo il mio sito ilMioSpazio. Ti invito come amico.

Va bene. Spegni il computer quando finisci. Ciao!

## ABC Glossario

### nomi

|                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>l'attrice</b>      | the actress               |
| <b>il cantante</b>    | the singer                |
| <b>il computer</b>    | the computer              |
| <b>le cose</b>        | the things                |
| <b>la foto</b>        | the photo                 |
| <b>il gruppo</b>      | the band                  |
| <b>il lettore MP3</b> | the MP3 player            |
| <b>l'orario</b>       | the schedule              |
| <b>la pagina</b>      | the page (web page)       |
| <b>il piano</b>       | the floor (of a building) |
| <b>il sito</b>        | the website               |

### aggettivo

|                      |           |
|----------------------|-----------|
| <b>organizzato/a</b> | organised |
|----------------------|-----------|

### verbi

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>mi alzo</b>         | I get up (from <b>alzarsi</b> —to get up)                 |
| <b>ascolto</b>         | I listen (from <b>ascoltare</b> —to listen)               |
| <b>clicca</b>          | click (from <b>clicare</b> —to click)                     |
| <b>controllo</b>       | I check (from <b>controllare</b> —to check)               |
| <b>devi</b>            | you have to (from <b>dovere</b> —to have to)              |
| <b>devo</b>            | I have to (from <b>dovere</b> —to have to)                |
| <b>divertiti</b>       | enjoy yourself (from <b>divertirsi</b> —to enjoy oneself) |
| <b>finisci</b>         | you finish (from <b>finire</b> —to finish)                |
| <b>guarda</b>          | look (from <b>guardare</b> —to look at/to watch)          |
| <b>incontrare</b>      | to meet   |
| <b>ti invito</b>       | I'll invite you (from <b>invitare</b> —to invite)         |
| <b>mi lavo</b>         | I wash myself (from <b>lavarsi</b> —to wash oneself)      |
| <b>mi lavo i denti</b> | I brush my teeth (from <b>lavare</b> —to clean/to wash)   |



|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>navigare su Internet</b> | to surf the Internet                                  |
| <b>mi riposo</b>            | I'm resting (from <b>riposarsi</b> —to rest)          |
| <b>scappare</b>             | to run away   |
| <b>senti</b>                | listen (from <b>sentire</b> —to listen)               |
| <b>spegni</b>               | switch off (from <b>spegnere</b> —to switch off)      |
| <b>mi vesto</b>             | I dress myself (from <b>vestirsi</b> —to get dressed) |
| <b>vieni</b>                | come (from <b>venire</b> —to come)                    |

### altre espressioni e parole

|                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>accidenti!</b>            | damn!/oh my gosh!         |
| <b>che bella!</b>            | she's cute!               |
| <b>chi parla?</b>            | who is speaking?          |
| <b>cosa fai?</b>             | what are you doing?       |
| <b>d'accordo</b>             | all right then            |
| <b>dopo</b>                  | later                     |
| <b>fico!</b>                 | cool!                     |
| <b>le mie cose preferite</b> | my favourite things       |
| <b>mi piace da morire!</b>   | I'm mad about him/her/it! |
| <b>scherzo!</b>              | you're joking!            |
| <b>sei in anticipo</b>       | you're early              |
| <b>sono in ritardo</b>       | I'm late                  |

### Handy hint

Remember, to help read unfamiliar words or phrases, look for *cognates* (words that look and sound like English words).

## Attività 1.1

Look at the cartoon story and the **Glossario** to find the Italian translations for the below list of words. Then write six Italian sentences in your exercise book, using one of the words in each sentence. Your sentences should be different to those in the cartoon story.

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| 1 computer | 4 MP3 player |
| 2 singer   | 5 schedule   |
| 3 photo    | 6 website    |

## Attività 1.2

Refer to the cartoon story and answer these questions, in English, in your exercise book.

- 1 What time does Alessandro plan to be at Nathan's?
- 2 What is Nathan doing when Alessandro arrives at his place?
- 3 List three things Nathan has on his **ilMioSpazio** website.
- 4 Why does Nathan have to run off?
- 5 Who is Nathan meeting in a town square?



## Talking to people on the telephone

Notice how Nathan and Alessandro spoke to each other on the telephone in the cartoon story. There are a few differences between the language Italians use on the phone and the language we as Australians and English speakers use. Look at the table below:

| Italian expression                    | English equivalent  |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Pronto! (literally means 'I'm ready') | Hello!              |
| Chi parla?                            | Who is speaking?    |
| Sono io./Sono Anna.                   | It's me./It's Anna. |
| Sei tu?                               | Is that you?        |
| Senti...                              | Listen ...          |

To ask for someone's phone number you say: **Qual è il tuo numero di telefono?** (What is your phone number?). To respond you could say: **Il mio numero di telefono è...** (My phone number is ...).

Another interesting difference is that when Italians say their phone numbers, they don't always say them number by number. Rather they sometimes say them in groups of two.

**Esempi** 6873 4665 **sessantotto settantatré quarantasei sessantacinque**

And when there is a zero in the group of two:

0452 78 39 75 **zero quattro cinquantadue settantotto trentanove settantacinque**



### Handy hint

The country code for Italy is +39, just as the country code for Australia is +61.



## Tocca a te!

In pairs, take turns to ask for and give these phone numbers in Italian. When you finish, you could pick one number and race each other to see who can say it the fastest.

- |                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>1</b> 9076 3453     | <b>4</b> 6745 1234 |
| <b>2</b> 0456 82 34 81 | <b>5</b> 9832 1841 |
| <b>3</b> 0243 67 36 12 | <b>6</b> 5211 3989 |

Now try with these Italian phone numbers.

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>1</b> 0039 06 958167    | <b>3</b> 0039 08 5901 9942 |
| <b>2</b> 0039 34 9424 9620 | <b>4</b> 0039 07 6219 9988 |





## Dovere

**Dovere** (to have to) is a special kind of verb called a 'modal verb'. Modal verbs are verbs that need to be followed by another verb in the infinitive (e.g. **andare**). They are 'helping' verbs and can't stand alone. For example, in English, you can't just say: 'You have to the dishes.' You need to add an infinitive verb after the modal verb: 'You have to *clean* the dishes.'

- Esempi**
- Io devo leggere.** I have to read.
  - Tu devi parlare.** You have to speak.
  - Lei deve partire.** She has to leave.

Here is the full conjugation of the verb **dovere**.

|          | dovere  | to have to                                   |
|----------|---|--|
| singular | (io) devo<br>(tu) devi<br>(lui/lei) deve        | I have to<br>you have to<br>he/she/it has to |
| plural   | (noi) dobbiamo<br>(voi) dovete<br>(loro) devono | we have to<br>you have to<br>they have to    |



### Handy hint

Remember, you can't have two conjugated verbs together in the present tense.

### Attività 1.3

In your exercise book, translate these sentences into English. You can use a dictionary or the wordlist at the back of the book if you need help.

- 1 Devo scappare.
- 2 Devono arrivare.
- 3 Devi parlare italiano.
- 4 Deve fare colazione.
- 5 Dobbiamo guardare la televisione.
- 6 Dovete trovare l'aeroporto.



## Che ore sono? (The colloquial time)

You've already learnt how to use **alle** to express what time an event is taking place, like **alle quattro** (at four o'clock), **alle sette e mezza** (at seven thirty) or **all'una** (at one o'clock).

The clock face and table below show how to express the time by the hour and half hour in relation to the time of day.

**Esempi** **Vado a scuola alle otto e mezza di mattina.**  
**Il programma comincia alle sette di sera.**

Sono le dodici./È mezzogiorno./  
È mezzanotte.

Sono le undici.

È l'una.

Sono le dieci.

Sono le due.

Sono le nove.

Sono le tre.

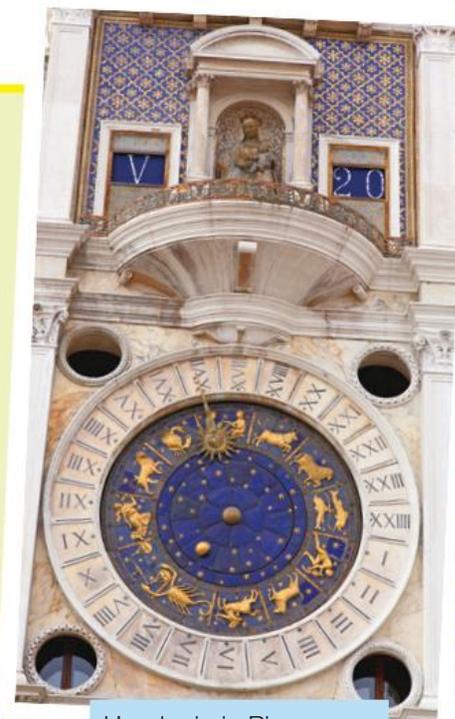
Sono le otto.

Sono le quattro.

Sono le sette.

Sono le cinque.

Sono le sei.



L'orologio in Piazza San Marco a Venezia

### Handy hint

Remember, you use 'È l'una.' instead of 'Sono le...' to say that it's one o'clock. You can also say 'È mezzogiorno.' (midday) or 'È mezzanotte.' (midnight) instead of 'Sono le dodici.'

|                    |                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| ...di mattina.     | ... in the morning. (a.m.)   |
| ...del pomeriggio. | ... in the afternoon. (p.m.) |
| ...di sera.        | ... in the evening. (p.m.)   |
| ...di notte.       | ... at night. (p.m./a.m.)    |

To add minutes to the time, you simply add the number of minutes to the hour, or take away minutes from the next hour. Look at the examples below:

Sono le tre **e trenta**/  
Sono le tre **e mezza**  
(del pomeriggio).

3:30 PM

Sono le due **e quindici**/  
Sono le due **e un**  
**quarto** (di mattina).

2:15 AM

È l'una **e cinquantasei**/  
Sono le due **meno**  
**quattro** (di mattina).

1:56 AM



Che ore sono?

Sono le cinque del pomeriggio.



Did you notice that to express anything before and including thirty minutes past the hour the word **e** was used, and anything after half past the word **meno** was used? A good way to remember whether to use **e** or **meno** is to think of them as a mathematical sum. For example:

**e** means plus (+), so you add the number of minutes to the hour

**Sono le due e ventinove del pomeriggio.** It's 2.29 p.m.

**hour + E + minutes elapsed**

**meno** means minus (-), so you subtract the number of minutes from the next hour

**Sono le undici meno dieci di notte.** It's 10.50 p.m.

**the next hour + MENO + minutes to the next hour**

Notice in the example above that you need to subtract from **undici** (eleven) to get back to the tenth hour (or ten o'clock).

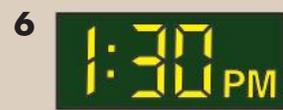


### Tocca a te!

Look at the clocks below and, in pairs, take turns to ask and give one another the time in Italian.

**Esempio A:** Che ore sono?

**B:** Sono le nove di mattina.



### Investigazione Culturale

#### Cosa pensi?

Can you think of any cases/contexts where the twenty-four hour clock is used in Australia? Why do you think it is used?

### Twenty-four hour clock

In Italy, people often refer to the time using the twenty-four hour clock. So instead of starting at one again (after 12.00 p.m.), Italians continue counting (**Sono le tredici/le quattordici** etc.).

With twenty-four hour time **...di mattina, ...del pomeriggio** etc. aren't added to the expression of time. This is because they aren't needed as the time of day is implicit in the number being used.

# L'orario per il lunedì

## Monday's schedule

Below is a screen grab of a web page from Nathan's **ilMioSpazio** website that outlines his daily routine on a Monday.

**ilMioSpazio** Home Profile Inbox Search

**6.00 a.m.** Alle sei di mattina, mi sveglio.

**6.15 a.m.** Alle sei e quindici, mi alzo.

**6.20 a.m.** Alle sei e venti, faccio colazione.

**6.30 a.m.** Alle sei e mezza, mi faccio la doccia, mi lavo i denti e mi vesto.

**7.00 a.m.** Alle sette, vado a scuola con Diana. Andiamo in bici.

**7.45 a.m.** Alle otto meno un quarto, comincia la scuola.

**10.15 a.m.** Alle dieci e quindici, facciamo ricreazione e mi riposo un po'.

**10.50 a.m.** Alle dieci e cinquanta, ho inglese e studio la grammatica.

**1.00 p.m.** All'una del pomeriggio, finisce la scuola. Vado a casa e faccio i compiti.

**3.40 p.m.** Alle quattro meno venti, gioco a pallacanestro con i miei amici. Ci divertiamo tanto!

Mi alzo.

Mi lavo i denti.



### nomi

**i compiti** homework  
**la grammatica** the grammar

### verbi

**ci divertiamo** we enjoy ourselves (from **divertirsi**—to enjoy oneself)  
**mi faccio la doccia** I have a shower (from **farsi la doccia**—to have a shower)  
**finisce** he/she/it finishes (from **finire**—to finish)  
**mi sveglio** I wake up (from **svegliarsi**—to wake up)



## Verbi riflessivi

Look at Nathan's **orario** on page 9 again. Can you see the reflexive verbs? Did you recognise any from your previous learning? Remember, reflexive verbs are a particular group of verbs in which the action is performed on, and 'reflected' back onto the subject.

Reflexive verbs are identifiable by the **-si** endings they carry in the infinitive form and the reflexive pronouns (**mi, ti, si, ci, vi, si**) that are placed before the verb when conjugated. Sometimes a normal infinitive verb can have a reflexive equivalent. Look at these examples:

### Infinitive

**lavare** (to wash)

**vestire** (to dress)

### Reflexive infinitive

**lavarsi** (to wash oneself)

**vestirsi** (to get dressed)

Here's a short guide on how to conjugate a reflexive verb:

- remove the reflexive **-si** ending (e.g. **lavarsi**)
- change the ending of the verb according to who is doing the action (e.g. **tu lavi**)
- include the appropriate reflexive pronoun before the verb. (e.g. **tu ti lavi**)

Take note that the infinitive of a reflexive verb doesn't always end in **-si**. It can sometimes end in **-mi** (after **io**) and **-ti** (after **tu**) when it follows a conjugated verb.

**Esempi Io devo riposarmi.** I have to rest.

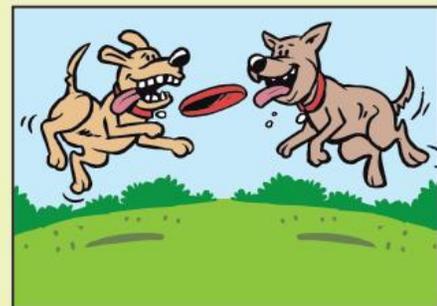
**Tu devi alzarti.** You have to get up.

Notice that the verb **dovere** is conjugated, so the reflexive verb has to be in the infinitive. This follows the rule that you can't have two conjugated verbs together in the present tense.

Here are some examples of commonly used reflexive verbs.



**Io mi pettino i capelli.**  
**pettinarsi** to brush one's hair



**I cani si divertono.**  
**divertirsi** to enjoy oneself

### Handy hint

You have already learnt a bit about **verbi riflessivi** in *Formula italiano 1* student book on pages 151-2.

### Handy hint

Sometimes you will see a reflexive verb with a reflexive pronoun (**mi, ti, si, ci, vi, si**) but without a subject pronoun (**io, tu, lui/lei, noi, voi, loro**). For example, you could use **mi riposo** instead of **io mi riposo**.





Clara si mette la giacca.  
**mettersi** to put on oneself



Ahh! Adesso io mi ricordo!  
**ricordarsi** to remember



Il giocatore si veste.  
**vestirsi** to get dressed



Giulio si alza alle sette di mattina.  
**alzarsi** to get up



Noi ci svegliamo alle otto.  
**svegliarsi** to wake up



Mio padre si riposa.  
**riposarsi** to rest



Voi vi lavate le mani.  
**lavarsi** to wash oneself



Io mi faccio la doccia.  
**farsi la doccia** to have a shower

### Handy hint

Remember that the verb **fare** is irregular. It retains its irregular conjugation even in its reflexive form.

## Attività 1.4

Look at the cartoon story again. Identify all of the reflexive verbs and write their infinitive and conjugated forms in your exercise book. Then choose two of the reflexive verbs to write your own sentences using these reflexive forms.

## Attività 1.5



Listen to Melanie talking about her schedule for the morning. In your exercise book, answer the following questions, in English, based on the information you hear.

- 1 What time does Melanie get up?
- 2 What does Melanie do after eating breakfast?
- 3 How do Melanie and her friends go to school?
- 4 What does Melanie do at recess?
- 5 For which subject does Melanie say she has misplaced her homework?



### Tocca a te!

Using the reflexive verbs mentioned in this chapter, ask a classmate what time he/she does certain actions. Your partner will need to respond using reflexive verbs and expressions of time also. Take turns to ask and respond.

**Esempio** **A:** A che ora ti svegli?  
**B:** Mi sveglio alle sette di mattina.



### Investigazione Culturale



## Su Internet

As in Australia and many other countries, young people in Italy use the Internet for social networking to chat and keep up-to-date with friends and family all over the world. If you use social networking websites to communicate with others, you can even access your web page(s) via the Italian website equivalents.

Search engines operate in the same way as in an English-speaking country—there are Italian versions of Yahoo! and Google online, along with dedicated Italian search engines.

However, there are some differences when it comes to the Internet and computers. In Australia, many websites end in **.au** to indicate to the user that the website is Australian. In Italy, **.it** is used instead for the same purpose. Italians use different keyboards as well to help with typing letters with accents.



la tastiera italiana

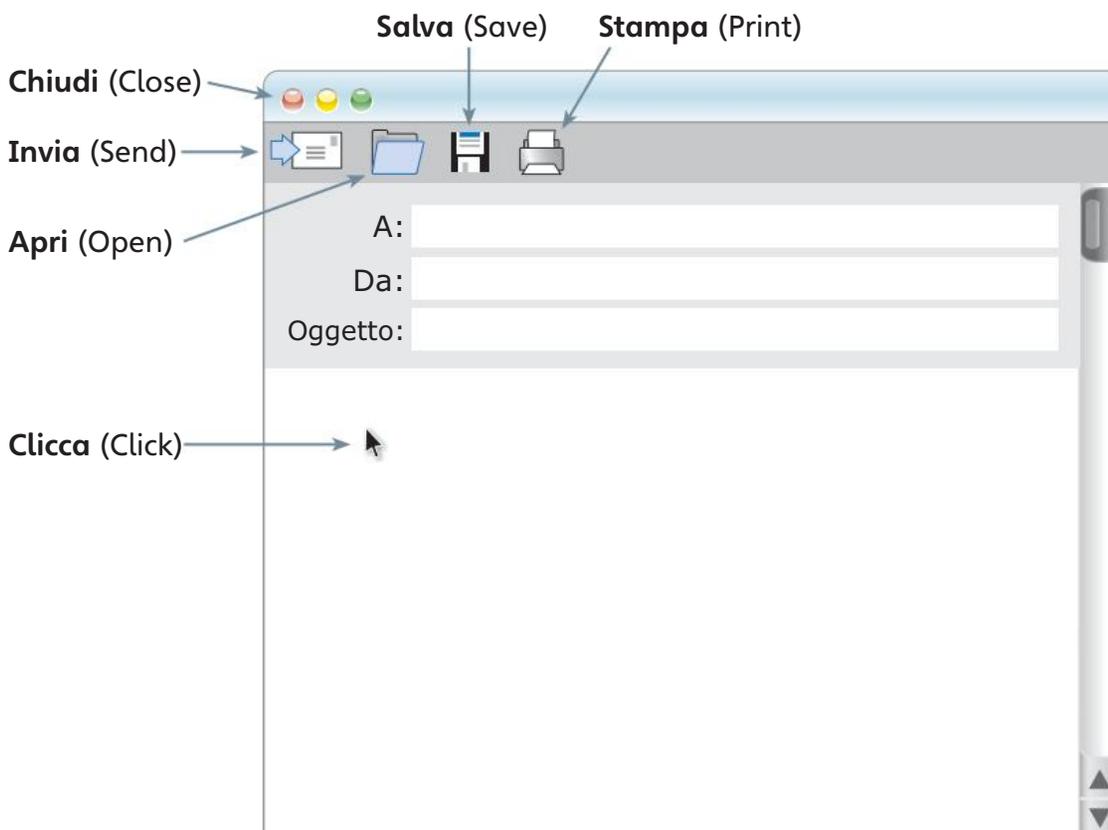
## Cosa pensi ?

- 1 In an age where English is one of the world's dominant languages, why do you think Italians still translate English-based websites from around the world into Italian (e.g. MySpace and Facebook)?
- 2 How do you usually communicate with your friends online? Do you use social networking websites or email etc. to chat with friends? Do you think young people in Italy communicate in the same way?
- 3 Have you ever thought about using your social networking sites in Italian?

# Linguaggio tecnologico

## Technological language

Many of the Italian words and phrases associated with computers, the Internet and technology generally come from the English language. The email frame below shows examples of Italian words for commonly used computer commands.



# Computer and Internet terminology

Below are more common words associated with computers and the web. Note that there are plenty of cognates.

## nomi

|                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>l'accesso/il login</b> | the login       |
| <b>il blog</b>            | the blog        |
| <b>il link</b>            | the link        |
| <b>l'email</b>            | the email       |
| <b>l'indirizzo</b>        | the web address |
| <b>Internet</b>           | the Internet    |
| <b>il nome utente</b>     | the username    |
| <b>la pagina web</b>      | the web page    |
| <b>la password</b>        | the password    |
| <b>il podcast</b>         | the podcast     |
| <b>il sito web</b>        | the website     |
| <b>il tasto d'invio</b>   | the enter key   |
| <b>l'uscita/il logout</b> | the logout      |

## verbi

|                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>andare avanti</b>                 | to go forward                         |
| <b>andare indietro</b>               | to go back                            |
| <b>cancellare</b>                    | to delete                             |
| <b>cercare</b>                       | to search                             |
| <b>controllare</b>                   | to check (emails/<br>website content) |
| <b>fare l'upload<br/>or caricare</b> | to upload                             |
| <b>inviare</b>                       | to send                               |
| <b>scaricare</b>                     | to download                           |

## Handy hint

Take care when you conjugate **caricare**, **scaricare** and **cercare**. Because they end in **-care** you have to add a 'ch' to the **tu** and **noi** conjugations to keep the 'k' sound.

**tu scarichi, noi scarichiamo, tu cerchi, noi cerchiamo**

Fermate qui  
per favore.



## Investigazione Linguistica

### L'imperativo

The word **clicca** was used in the cartoon story earlier in the chapter when Nathan was giving Alessandro instructions about navigating his **ilMioSpazio** website. Though **clicca** and the other computer commands may look like forms of verbs in their present tense, they are actually examples of the grammar form known as **l'imperativo** (the imperative).

In Italian, **l'imperativo** is used when giving an order, a command or an instruction. In English, we usually add an exclamation mark to emphasise the order. Other examples of the imperative from the cartoon story are **Guarda** (Look!) and **Spegni il computer** (Turn off the computer!).



Using **l'imperativo** is simple. Look at the imperative form for the **-are**, **-ere** and **-ire** verbs in the tables that follow. They will give you the pattern to follow when conjugating verbs in the imperative **tu** and **voi** forms.

Note that the imperative form doesn't take a subject pronoun.

**-ARE** verbs

| Infinitive                 | Present tense for <b>tu</b> (singular) and <b>voi</b> (plural) | Imperative tense for <b>tu</b> (singular) and <b>voi</b> (plural) |
|----------------------------|--|---|
| <b>clickare</b> (to click) | <b>(tu) clicchi</b> (you click)                                | <b>Clicca!</b> (Click!)   |
|                            | <b>(voi) cliccate</b> (you click)                              | <b>Cliccate!</b> (Click!)   |
| <b>fermare</b> (to stop)   | <b>(tu) fermi</b> (you stop)                                   | <b>Ferma!</b> (Stop!)   |
|                            | <b>(voi) fermate</b> (you stop)                                | <b>Fermate!</b> (Stop!)   |

**-ERE** and **-IRE** verbs

| Infinitive                 | Present tense for <b>tu</b> (singular) and <b>voi</b> (plural) | Imperative tense for <b>tu</b> (singular) and <b>voi</b> (plural) |
|----------------------------|--|---|
| <b>chiudere</b> (to close) | <b>(tu) chiudi</b> (you close)                                 | <b>Chiudi!</b> (Close!)   |
|                            | <b>(voi) chiudete</b> (you close)                              | <b>Chiudete!</b> (Close!)   |
| <b>finire</b> (to finish)  | <b>(tu) finisci</b> (you finish)                               | <b>Finisci!</b> (Finish!)   |
|                            | <b>(voi) finite</b> (you finish)                               | <b>Finite!</b> (Finish!)  |

These forms of **l'imperativo** would be used when telling one or more people what to do, when you would normally speak to them using the **tu** or **voi** forms. There is also a **noi** form of **l'imperativo**, which is the same as the present tense **noi** form (e.g. **Andiamo!**).



**Handy hint**

Notice that the **tu** imperative form of **-are** verbs looks like (but isn't) the present tense of the **lui/lei** form.

**Handy hint**

Notice that the imperative form of **-ere** and **-ire** verbs looks the same as the present tense. This makes them even easier to remember; you just need to add emphasis by changing the tone of your voice when you express them as an order.

**Cosa pensi?**

Compare the imperative in Italian to the imperative in English. Do you think they work in the same way?

## Handy hint

It is important to remember that even though the imperative looks like the present tense, it is a completely different tense.

## Attività 1.6

Change these verbs into the **tu** imperative form and express them as orders to a partner.

**Esempio** chiudere → **Chiudi!**

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| 1 mangiare | 5 dormire   |
| 2 aprire   | 6 scrivere  |
| 3 guardare | 7 cantare   |
| 4 parlare  | 8 ascoltare |

## Attività 1.7

Use the phrases in the following grid to create a dialogue with a partner. You will need to choose phrases from the options in each row and column. Remember to listen to your partner's answers before choosing your responses.

|          |                             |           |
|----------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| <b>A</b> | Ciao amico!<br>Salve amica! | Cosa fai? |
|----------|-----------------------------|-----------|

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| <b>B</b> | Ascolto musica sul mio lettore MP3.<br>Mi riposo un po'.<br>Mi diverto con i videogiochi. |
|----------|---|

|          |                |   |
|----------|----------------|---|
| <b>A</b> | Bene.<br>Fico! | Vuoi andare<br>in bici?<br>in skateboard?<br>in motorino? |
|----------|----------------|---|

|          |                   |  |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| <b>B</b> | Sì, ma prima devo | fare i compiti.<br>inviare un'email.<br>controllare il mio sito ilMioSpazio. |
|----------|-------------------|--|

|          |              |  |
|----------|--------------|--|
| <b>A</b> | anch'io devo | fare i compiti.<br>inviare un'email.<br>controllare il mio sito ilMioSpazio. |
|----------|--------------|--|

|          |                        |   |
|----------|------------------------|---|
| <b>B</b> | Allora, ci incontriamo | alle sette di sera?<br>alle quindici?<br>alle due del pomeriggio? |
|----------|------------------------|---|

|          |                 |   |
|----------|-----------------|---|
| <b>A</b> | Va bene,<br>No, | ci vediamo<br>alle sette di sera.<br>alle quindici.<br>alle due del pomeriggio. |
|----------|-----------------|---|

|          |                                      |
|----------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>B</b> | A più tardi!<br>A dopo!<br>A presto! |
|----------|--------------------------------------|

## ABC Glossario

**a dopo**  
see you later

**allora**  
in that case

**ci incontriamo**  
we'll meet

**i videogiochi**  
the video games

**vuoi andare...?**  
do you want to go ...?

# Ripasso

- 1 Match the subject pronoun with the correct conjugation of the verb **dovere** by drawing a line between the two.

|      |          |
|------|----------|
| noi  | devono   |
| lei  | devo     |
| io   | devi     |
| loro | dovete   |
| tu   | dobbiamo |
| lui  | deve     |
| voi  | deve     |

- 2 Complete the sentences in your exercise book with appropriate technological language.

- a Per inviare un'email, clicca su \_\_\_\_\_.
- b Voglio \_\_\_\_\_ il podcast.
- c Per entrare in un sito sicuro, devi usare un \_\_\_\_\_ e una \_\_\_\_\_.
- d Devo \_\_\_\_\_ un'email alla mia amica.
- e Devo \_\_\_\_\_ le mie email.
- f Clicca su \_\_\_\_\_ per andare avanti nel sito.

- 3 For each picture, write a sentence in Italian in your exercise book that describes what Giulio is doing, including the time the activity is taking place.

**Esempio** Sono le sette e trentacinque di mattina e Giulio si pettina i capelli.



- 4 Create a list of commands using the imperative and a dictionary to help you with new vocabulary. Then try them out on your teacher and classmates. Here are a few to get you started.

|                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| Corri veloce!       | Run fast!          |
| Chiudi la porta!    | Shut the door!     |
| Salva il documento! | Save the document! |

# Riassunto

## Now you can:

### identify computer and Internet terminology

|                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| l'accesso/il login | the login       |
| il blog            | the blog        |
| il link            | the link        |
| l'email            | the email       |
| l'indirizzo        | the web address |
| Internet           | the Internet    |
| il nome utente     | the username    |
| la pagina web      | the web page    |
| la password        | the password    |
| il podcast         | the podcast     |
| il sito web        | the website     |
| il tasto d'invio   | the enter key   |
| l'uscita/il logout | the logout      |

### talk about your daily schedule using reflexive verbs

|                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| alzarsi         | to get up           |
| divertirsi      | to enjoy oneself    |
| farsi la doccia | to have a shower    |
| lavarsi         | to wash oneself     |
| mettersi        | to put on oneself   |
| pettinarsi      | to brush one's hair |
| ricordarsi      | to remember         |
| riposarsi       | to rest             |
| svegliarsi      | to wake up          |
| vestirsi        | to get dressed      |

|          | alzarsi           | to get up         |
|----------|-------------------|-------------------|
| singular | (io) mi alzo      | I get up          |
|          | (tu) ti alzi      | you get up        |
|          | (lui/lei) si alza | he/she/it gets up |
| plural   | (noi) ci alziamo  | we get up         |
|          | (voi) vi alzate   | you get up        |
|          | (loro) si alzano  | they get up       |

### talk to people on the telephone

|                                       |                            |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Pronto! (literally means 'I'm ready') | Hello!                     |
| Chi parla?                            | Who is speaking?           |
| Sono io./Sono Anna.                   | It's me./It's Anna.        |
| Sei tu?                               | Is that you?               |
| Senti...                              | Listen ...                 |
| Qual è il tuo numero di telefono?     | What is your phone number? |
| Il mio numero di telefono è...        | My phone number is ...     |

### use the verb dovere

|          | dovere         | to have to       |
|----------|----------------|------------------|
| singular | (io) devo      | I have to        |
|          | (tu) devi      | you have to      |
|          | (lui/lei) deve | he/she/it has to |
| plural   | (noi) dobbiamo | we have to       |
|          | (voi) dovete   | you have to      |
|          | (loro) devono  | they have to     |

### ask for and tell the time

Che ore sono? What time is it?

|                  |                     |                 |                      |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| È l'una.         | It's one o'clock.   | Sono le otto.   | It's eight o'clock.  |
| Sono le due.     | It's two o'clock.   | Sono le nove.   | It's nine o'clock.   |
| Sono le tre.     | It's three o'clock. | Sono le dieci.  | It's ten o'clock.    |
| Sono le quattro. | It's four o'clock.  | Sono le undici. | It's eleven o'clock. |
| Sono le cinque.  | It's five o'clock.  | Sono le dodici. | It's twelve o'clock. |
| Sono le sei.     | It's six o'clock.   | È mezzogiorno.  | It's midday.         |
| Sono le sette.   | It's seven o'clock. | È mezzanotte.   | It's midnight.       |

### give orders and commands using l'imperativo

| Infinitive          | Present tense for tu and voi | Imperative tense for tu and voi |
|---------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| cliccare (to click) | (tu) clicchi (you click)     | Clicca! (Click!)                |
|                     | (voi) cliccate (you click)   | Cliccate! (Click!)              |
| chiudere (to close) | (tu) chiudi (you close)      | Chiudi! (Close!)                |
|                     | (voi) chiudete (you close)   | Chiudete! (Close!)              |
| finire (to finish)  | (tu) finisci (you finish)    | Finisci! (Finish!)              |
|                     | (voi) finite (you finish)    | Finite! (Finish!)               |

A collage at the top of the page features a torn paper effect. On the left, there are images of Italian architecture, including a tall tower and a dome. On the right, there is a blue-tinted image of a classical statue holding a globe. The background is a mix of red, purple, and blue geometric shapes.

# Mamma mia!

# Quanti messaggi!

## You will learn how to:

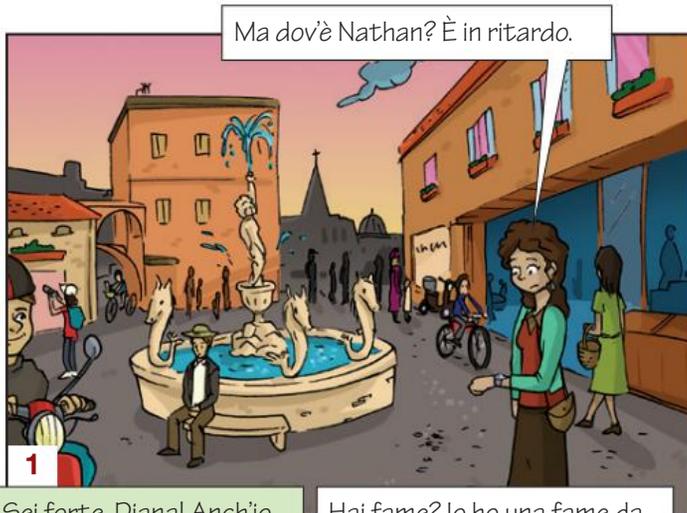
- use some common Italian expressions
- identify Italian film genres
- talk about your favourite things using the adjective **preferito/a**
- use the various forms of the adjective **quello**
- use the irregular verbs **dire**, **venire** and **uscire**
- use the prepositions **da**, **di**, **in**, **a**, **con** and **per**
- write emails and text messages in Italian.





# Un appuntamento in centro

Nathan is running late for his date with Diana. They're meeting in a **piazza** and will decide what to do from there.



Ma dov'è Nathan? È in ritardo.



Scusa, Diana! Arrivo! Sono in ritardo!

Era ora, ma non m'importa adesso che sei qui. Sono contenta di vederti.



Sei forte, Diana! Anch'io sono felice che usciamo. Cosa vuoi fare?

Hai fame? Io ho una fame da lupo! Possiamo cenare e dopo forse vediamo un film?

RISTORANTE

GELATERIA

Certo! Ottima idea!



Che cosa vuoi mangiare, Diana?

Vorrei una limonata perché ho sete e una pizza margherita. E tu?

Ho voglia di una grande bistecca. Ma quando viene il cameriere?



Buonasera. Cosa desiderate?

Prendiamo due limonate, una pizza margherita e una bistecca con patatine. Abbiamo un po' fretta. Vogliamo vedere un film dopo cena.

Certo. Cerchiamo di fare presto.



Chi è?

È la mia amica Stella. Lei mi chiede cosa faccio. Dico che ceniamo e poi andiamo a vedere un film.





## ABC Glossario

### nomi

|                                  |                             |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>la bistecca</b>               | the steak                   |
| <b>il cameriere</b>              | the waiter                  |
| <b>la famiglia che mi ospita</b> | the host family             |
| <b>il film</b>                   | the film                    |
| <b>il film giallo</b>            | the thriller (film)         |
| <b>i film romantici</b>          | the romantic (comedy) films |
| <b>la limonata</b>               | the lemonade                |
| <b>le patatine</b>               | the chips                   |
| <b>la pizza margherita</b>       | the margherita pizza        |
| <b>l'SMS</b>                     | the SMS                     |

### aggettivi

|                |                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>nuovo/a</b> | new                            |
| <b>quei</b>    | those (form of <b>quello</b> ) |
| <b>quel</b>    | that (form of <b>quello</b> )  |

### verbi

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| <b>cenare</b>     | to dine/to have dinner  |
| <b>ceniamo</b>    | we dine/we have dinner (from <b>cenare</b> —to dine/to have dinner) |
| <b>cerchiamo</b>  | we try (from <b>cercare</b> —to try)                                |
| <b>chiede</b>     | he/she/it asks (from <b>chiedere</b> —to ask)                       |
| <b>desiderate</b> | you (plural) desire/like (from <b>desiderare</b> —to desire)        |
| <b>dico</b>       | I say (from <b>dire</b> —to say/to tell)                            |
| <b>esco</b>       | I go out (from <b>uscire</b> —to go out)                            |
| <b>mandare</b>    | to send   |
| <b>possiamo</b>   | we can (from <b>potere</b> —to be able to)                          |



## Handy hint

The word **vogliamo** is the **noi** form of the modal verb **volere**. You have already come across this verb in your previous learning in the form of **voglio** (I want) and **vorrei** (I would like).

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| <b>usciamo</b>  | we go out (from <b>uscire</b> —to go out)        |
| <b>vederti</b>  | to see you (from <b>vedersi</b> —to see oneself) |
| <b>viene</b>    | he/she/it comes (from <b>venire</b> —to come)    |
| <b>vogliamo</b> | we want (from <b>volere</b> —to want to)         |

## altre espressioni e parole

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <b>che film vuoi vedere?</b>          | what film do you want to see?          |
| <b>abbiamo un po' fretta e poi...</b> | we're in a bit of a hurry and then ... |
| <b>era ora...</b>                     | about time ...                         |
| <b>fare presto</b>                    | to be quick                            |
| <b>hai fame?</b>                      | are you hungry?                        |
| <b>ho bisogno di...</b>               | I need to ...                          |
| <b>ho paura di...</b>                 | I'm scared of ...                      |
| <b>ho sete</b>                        | I'm thirsty                            |
| <b>ho una fame da lupo!</b>           | I'm starving!                          |
| <b>ho voglia di...</b>                | I feel like ...                        |
| <b>lei mi chiede cosa faccio</b>      | she is asking me what I'm doing        |
| <b>non m'importa</b>                  | I don't care                           |
| <b>ottima idea!</b>                   | great idea!                            |
| <b>perché</b>                         | because                                |
| <b>vediamo...</b>                     | we'll see ...                          |

Ma dov'è Nathan? È in ritardo.



## Attività 2.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- |   |  |          |          |
|---|--|----------|----------|
| 1 | Nathan arrives on time to his date with Diana.     | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| 2 | Diana is angry at Nathan when he arrives.          | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| 3 | Diana isn't very hungry.                           | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| 4 | Diana says she is thirsty.                         | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| 5 | Nathan wants to eat a steak.                       | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| 6 | Diana's friend is asking what time she'll be home. | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| 7 | Nathan needs Stephen's motor scooter.              | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| 8 | Diana wants to see a thriller after dinner.        | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |



## Common Italian expressions

Have you ever noticed how some things we say in English are actually quite strange if you take them literally? For example: 'She annoyed Simon so much that he hit the roof.' Did Simon actually hit the roof? These kinds of sayings are called idiomatic expressions.

Idiomatic expressions are also part of the Italian language. Here are some commonly used Italian **espressioni** and **espressioni idiomatiche**.

| Italian expression                      | English translation                                     |
|---|---|
| Accidenti!                              | Damn!/Oh my gosh!                                       |
| In bocca al lupo!                       | Break a leg!/Good luck!                                 |
| Crepi!                                  | Thanks! (Only in response to <b>In bocca al lupo!</b> ) |
| Era ora!                                | About time!   |
| Fico!                                   | Cool!   |
| Ho una fame da lupo!                    | I'm starving!   |
| Mamma mia!                              | Dear me!  |
| Mi piace da morire!                     | I'm mad about him/her/it!                               |
| Non ci ho visto più.                    | I lost my temper.                                       |
| Non m'importa.                          | I don't care.   |
| Non vedo l'ora di (+ infinitive)...     | I can't wait until ...                                  |
| Sei forte!                              | You're great!   |
| Sono nei guai.                          | I'm in a pickle.  |
| Quando il gatto non c'è i topi ballano. | When the cat is away the mice will play.                |



### Cosa pensi ?

How many English idiomatic expressions can you think of? Do you use idiomatic expressions in conversation often?

Ho una fame da lupo! Non vedo l'ora di mangiare.



### Handy hint

Italians use the expression '**In bocca al lupo!**' in the same way English speakers use the phrase 'Break a leg!' to wish someone good luck. '**In bocca al lupo!**' translates literally to 'In the mouth of the wolf'. The appropriate Italian reply to the expression is '**Crepi!**' ('May the wolf die!').

## Attività 2.2

Read the dialogue below and answer the questions that follow, in English, in your exercise book.

**Silvana:** Ciao Fabio! Come stai?

**Fabio:** Ciao Silvana! Sto bene, ma ho una fame da lupo!

**Silvana:** Perché? Non hai mangiato oggi?

**Fabio:** No, ma non vedo l'ora di mangiare. Devo parlare in classe oggi.

**Silvana:** Ah sì? Sei nervoso, allora? Di cosa devi parlare?

**Fabio:** Ecco perché sono nervoso! Non lo so.

**Silvana:** Accidenti! Sei nei guai, allora.

**Fabio:** Sì! Penso che la prof mi ammazza!

**Silvana:** Non preoccuparti! Sei forte!

**Fabio:** Grazie. Devo andare adesso. La mia classe comincia.

**Silvana:** In bocca al lupo!

**Fabio:** Crepi!

1 How is Fabio feeling?

2 What can't he wait to do?

3 What is the subject of Fabio's class talk?

4 What does Fabio think the teacher will do to him?

5 How does Silvana encourage him?

6 Why does Fabio have to end the conversation?



### aggettivo

**nervoso/a** nervous

### avverbio

**allora** then

### verbo

**penso** I think (from **pensare**—to think)

### altre espressioni e parole

**di cosa**

of what

**mi ammazza**

he/she/it will kill me

**non hai mangiato**

you have not eaten

**non lo so**

I don't know



With a partner, practise saying the dialogue from **Attività 2.2** aloud. When you and your partner can confidently say one character's part, swap roles.



## Italian expressions that use avere

Look back at the cartoon story again. Can you see that **ho** and **hai** (followed by other phrases) occur a lot but don't necessarily mean 'to have' something? These are all expressions that use the verb **avere**. Examples of these expressions are found in the table.

| Italian expression  | English translation           |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| avere bisogno di... | to need ...                   |
| avere caldo         | to be hot (body temperature)  |
| avere fame          | to be hungry                  |
| avere freddo        | to be cold (body temperature) |
| avere fretta        | to be in a hurry              |
| avere paura di...   | to be afraid of ...           |
| avere ragione       | to be right                   |
| avere sete          | to be thirsty                 |
| avere sonno         | to be sleepy                  |
| avere torto         | to be wrong                   |
| avere voglia di...  | to feel like ...              |

It is easy to use these expressions in your Italian. All you need to do is conjugate **avere** and add the phrase afterwards.

**Esempi** **Abbiamo fame.** We are hungry.  
**Hanno caldo.** They are (feel) hot.



### Handy hint

Don't get confused! **Avere** usually means 'to have' but when you combine it with other phrases it can mean 'to be', 'to need', 'to want' or even 'to hurry'.

### Cosa pensi ?

Can you think of any English verbs that can mean different things when combined with other words? For example, think about the English expression 'to be running late'. There may not be any physical 'running' involved but 'I'm running late' is a common English expression used to convey when a person is behind schedule.

## Attività 2.3

Work out how to say these expressions using **avere** in Italian and write your answers in your exercise book. Then with a partner, take turns saying them to each other.

- I'm hungry.
- He is cold.
- You (singular) are afraid.
- I need a mobile phone.
- Margot and I are thirsty.
- You (singular) feel like pizza.
- Suzie is in a hurry.
- We are right.
- She is sleepy.
- You (plural) are wrong.



## Investigazione Culturale

### Italian film genres

In the cartoon story, Nathan and Diana talk about **film gialli** which, when translated literally, is 'yellow films' but really means thriller/mystery films in Italian. It could seem strange that **gli italiani** would refer to films as a colour, but the term originates from the late 1920s when an Italian publishing house published a series of thriller, crime and mystery novels with yellow covers: **i romanzi gialli**.

When cinema became popular, Italian film companies took inspiration from the yellow covers and adopted the term **film gialli** to describe the thriller/mystery genre.

Here are some other film genres translated into Italian.

- i film di fantascienza** science-fiction films
- i film dell'orrore** horror films
- i film comici** comedy films
- i film drammatici** drama films
- i film romantici** romantic (comedy) films



**La ragazza che sapeva troppo** (*The Girl Who Knew Too Much*) is a famous Italian **film giallo** that was released in 1963.

### Cosa pensi ?

Are there any types of film that have odd genre names in English? Can you think of why they might have been labelled like this?

### Handy hint

**Mi piace** is used to express liking a singular object. **Mi piacciono** is used to express liking more than one (plural) object.



## Investigazione Linguistica

### Cosa preferisci?

There are a few common phrases in Italian to express liking something. You already know one: **mi piace...** (I like ...). To say that something is your favourite, you use the adjective **preferito/a** and follow this pattern:

- Il mio attore preferito è...** My favourite actor is ... (masculine singular)
- I miei attori preferiti sono...** My favourite actors are ... (masculine plural)
- La mia attrice preferita è...** My favourite actress is ... (feminine singular)
- Le mie attrici preferite sono...** My favourite actresses are ... (feminine plural)

To begin a sentence to express that something is your favourite, you need to start with a possessive adjective (**il mio, la mia, i miei, le mie**) that agrees with your favourite thing. You also need to use the adjective **preferito/a** and adjust the ending (**preferito, preferita, preferiti, preferite**) depending on the gender (masculine or feminine) and number (one or more) of the thing being preferred.

# Le mie cose preferite

## My favourite things

Examine this web page from Nathan's **ilMioSpazio** website that lists all his favourite things.

Le cose preferite di Nathan!

**ilMioSpazio** Home Profile Inbox Search

**Passatempi preferiti:** uscire con i miei amici, andare al cinema, ascoltare la musica, giocare con i videogiochi e andare a pesca

**Sport preferiti:** la pallacanestro e il tennis (Forza Rafa!)

**Attrice preferita:** Kristen Stewart

**Gruppo preferito:** AC/DC

**Cantante preferito:** Justin Timberlake

**Cibo preferito:** la bistecca

**Squadre preferite (di calcio):** Melbourne Victory e Juventus

 Kristen Stewart

 Rafael Nadal

## Attività 2.4

Refer to the web page from Nathan's **ilMioSpazio** website above. Write five Italian sentences, in your exercise book, that explain what his favourite things are. Make sure you use the correct form of the adjective **preferito/a**.

**Esempio** Il suo cibo preferito è la bistecca.

### Handy hint

Remember, if you are referring to Nathan (using 'his'), you will need to use the correct form of the possessive adjective (**il suo**). Watch out for plurals too!

### Handy hint

When you are referring to yourself, make sure you use the correct form of the possessive adjective **il mio**.

### Tocca a te!

Now ask a partner what his/her favourite things are. Take turns to ask and respond.

**Esempio A:** Qual è il tuo cibo preferito?

**B:** Il mio cibo preferito è la pasta.



## Quello

You may remember from previous learning the different forms of the adjective **questo**, which means 'this' or 'these'. To say 'that' or 'those', Italians use the different forms of the adjective **quello**.

| Masculine |        |   |
|-----------|--------|---|
| Singular  | Plural | Use   |
| quel      | quei   | Used before nouns beginning with a consonant<br>(e.g. <b>quel ragazzo</b> , <b>quei ragazzi</b> )   |
| quell'    | quegli | Used before nouns beginning with a vowel<br>(e.g. <b>quell'amico</b> , <b>quegli amici</b> )  |
| quello    | quegli | Used before nouns beginning with <b>z</b> or <b>s</b> plus a consonant— <b>st</b> , <b>sp</b> , <b>sc</b> , <b>sn</b> etc.<br>(e.g. <b>quello sport</b> , <b>quegli sport</b> ) |
| Feminine  |        |   |
| Singular  | Plural | Use   |
| quella    | quelle | Used before nouns beginning with a consonant<br>(e.g. <b>quella ragazza</b> , <b>quelle ragazze</b> )   |
| quell'    | quelle | Used before nouns beginning with a vowel<br>(e.g. <b>quell'amica</b> , <b>quelle amiche</b> )   |

### Handy hint

Notice how the different forms of **quello** follow the same pattern as definite articles (e.g. **il ragazzo**, **la ragazza** etc.).

## Attività 2.5

Write the correct form of **quello** for these nouns in your exercise book. Careful, the definite article has not been included, so take note of the first and last letters of the noun to help you write the correct form of **quello**.

**Esempio** ragazza → **quella ragazza**

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| <b>1</b> treno     | <b>6</b> bambini |
| <b>2</b> giacca    | <b>7</b> cugine  |
| <b>3</b> americano | <b>8</b> zio     |
| <b>4</b> occhi     | <b>9</b> animale |
| <b>5</b> coniglio  | <b>10</b> scuola |



## Verbi irregolari

Expand your Italian by learning these irregular verbs.

### Dire

|          | dire           | to say/to tell       |
|----------|----------------|----------------------|
| singular | (io) dico      | I say/tell           |
|          | (tu) dici      | you say/tell         |
|          | (lui/lei) dice | he/she/it says/tells |
| plural   | (noi) diciamo  | we say/tell          |
|          | (voi) dite     | you say/tell         |
|          | (loro) dicono  | they say/tell        |

Use **che** for 'that' in expressions involving **dire**. For example, to say 'I say that ...' (**Io dico che...**) you would say: **Io dico che oggi è una bella giornata.** (I say that today is a beautiful day.)

Similarly, use **a** for 'to' when you want to direct your **dire** expression to someone. For example, to say 'I say to ...' (**Io dico a...**) you would say: **Io dico buongiorno a mio padre.** (I say good morning to my father.)

### Venire

|          | venire          | to come         |
|----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| singular | (io) vengo      | I come          |
|          | (tu) vieni      | you come        |
|          | (lui/lei) viene | he/she/it comes |
| plural   | (noi) veniamo   | we come         |
|          | (voi) venite    | you come        |
|          | (loro) vengono  | they come       |

Can you remember when you've used **vengo** and **vieni** before? You used these forms of **venire** to say where you come from. Can you remember which two prepositions you used after **vengo** and **vieni**? They were **da** to say you come *from* a city, and **a** or **in** to say you come *to* a city or country.

**Esempi** **Io vengo da Dublino.** I come from Dublin.

**Tu vieni a Sydney.** You come to Sydney.

**Lei viene in Canada.** She comes to Canada.

You will learn more about prepositions later in this chapter.

### Handy hint

Remember, some verbs are irregular because they don't follow the normal pattern of conjugation.

Io dico che mio fratello è pazzo!

Tu dici sempre così.



## Handy hint

**Uscita** is a useful word to know when travelling in Italy. It means 'way out' or 'exit'.

## Uscire

|          | uscire   | to go out                                    |
|----------|--|--|
| singular | (io) esco<br>(tu) esci<br>(lui/lei) esce       | I go out<br>you go out<br>he/she/it goes out |
| plural   | (noi) usciamo<br>(voi) uscite<br>(loro) escono | we go out<br>you go out<br>they go out       |

Use **con** for 'with' in expressions involving **uscire**. For example, to say 'I go out with ...' (**Io esco con...**) you would say: **Io esco con il mio amico.** (I go out with my friend.)



## Attività 2.6

Work out how to say these sentences in Italian and write your answers in your exercise book. Then with a partner, take turns saying them to each other.

- 1 I go out at three o'clock.
- 2 You (plural) come to school.
- 3 We say 'hello' to them.
- 4 You (singular) come home.
- 5 Stefan and Joanna say it's a good film.
- 6 My aunt goes out a bit.
- 7 Emma comes from Rome.
- 8 They say that the boy is cute.



## Investigazione Linguistica



### Le preposizioni

**Preposizioni** (prepositions) are 'function words' used in front of a noun, usually to show the relationship to another word (often another noun) in the sentence. Look at the examples in the sentences below.

The **book** is **on** the **table**.

(noun) (preposition) (noun)

The **shirts** are **in** the **wardrobe**.

(noun) (preposition) (noun)



Here is a list of common Italian prepositions and examples of their usage.

| Prepositions |         | Examples                                   |   |
|--------------|---------|--|---|
| da           | from/by | Mardi viene <b>da</b> Brisbane.            | Mardi comes from Brisbane.                |
| di           | of      | Suzie ha bisogno <b>di</b> una gonna rosa. | Suzie is in need of (needs) a pink skirt. |
| in           | in      | Io vengo <b>in</b> Italia.                 | I come to Italy.                          |
| a            | at/to   | Vado <b>a</b> casa mia.                    | I go to my house.                         |
| con          | with    | Loro escono <b>con</b> i loro genitori.    | They go out with their parents.           |
| per          | for     | La torta è <b>per</b> mio zio.             | The cake is for my uncle.                 |

Abito a Sydney con la mia famiglia.



## Investigazione Culturale

### Al telefono

Did you know that Italy has the highest number of mobile phones per capita in all of Europe? Over 147 per cent of the population has a mobile phone—this means there are more mobile phones in use than people in Italy! By comparison, Australian mobile phone usage is at 93 per cent of the population. Looks like **gli italiani** like to chat on the phone and send text messages more than we do!

Here is a list of useful telephone vocabulary.

|                                   |                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>il cellulare/il telefonino</b> | the mobile phone     |
| <b>l'SMS</b>                      | the SMS              |
| <b>la suoneria</b>                | the ringtone         |
| <b>mandare un SMS a...</b>        | to send a SMS to ... |
| <b>telefonare a...</b>            | to telephone ...     |

Ciao Gianni! Sono Pino. Come stai? Esco con...



### Attività 2.7



Listen to Diana and Nathan's telephone conversation and, in Italian, answer these questions in your exercise book.

- 1 Come sta Nathan?
- 2 Che cosa chiede Nathan a Diana?
- 3 Cosa ha voglia di fare Nathan?
- 4 Anche Diana ha voglia di fare questa cosa?

### Handy hint

Remember, you can use the words from the questions in your answers!



## SMS italiani



Just like people in English-speaking countries, Italians use abbreviations when sending SMS or chatting online using instant messaging programs. Below is a list of some of the common abbreviations used.



| SMS abbreviation | Italian expression   | English translation                               | Example               |
|------------------|----------------------|---|-----------------------|
| c                | ci                   | we  | c vediamo domani      |
| 6                | sei (essere)         | you are   | dove 6?               |
| c6               | ci sei?              | are you there?                                    | c6?                   |
| cm               | come                 | how   | cm stai?              |
| cs               | cosa                 | what  | cs fai?               |
| dp               | dopo                 | after   | arrivo dp             |
| nn               | non                  | not   | nn vengo oggi         |
| qnd              | quando               | when  | qnd ci vediamo?       |
| qst              | questo/a/i/e         | this  | mi piace qst ragazzo  |
| ta               | ti amo               | I love you (to a boyfriend/girlfriend)            | ta amore              |
| tvb              | ti voglio tanto bene | I love you a lot (to a family member or a friend) | tvb amico mio         |
| x                | per                  | for   | c'è un messaggio x te |

### Handy hint

There are two ways to say 'I love you.' in Italian. **'Ti amo.'** is used for romantic love between people, whereas **'Ti voglio bene.'** is said to close friends and family members.

### Cosa pensi ?

Do you think that the trend to abbreviate language for SMS and online messaging communication has had a negative impact on how we spell? If yes, in what way? Do you believe that a language should be altered in this way? Why or why not?

## Attività 2.8

Write a text message, using Italian abbreviations, to a classmate on a piece of paper for them to translate and read aloud. Then your partner will write their response for you to translate and read.

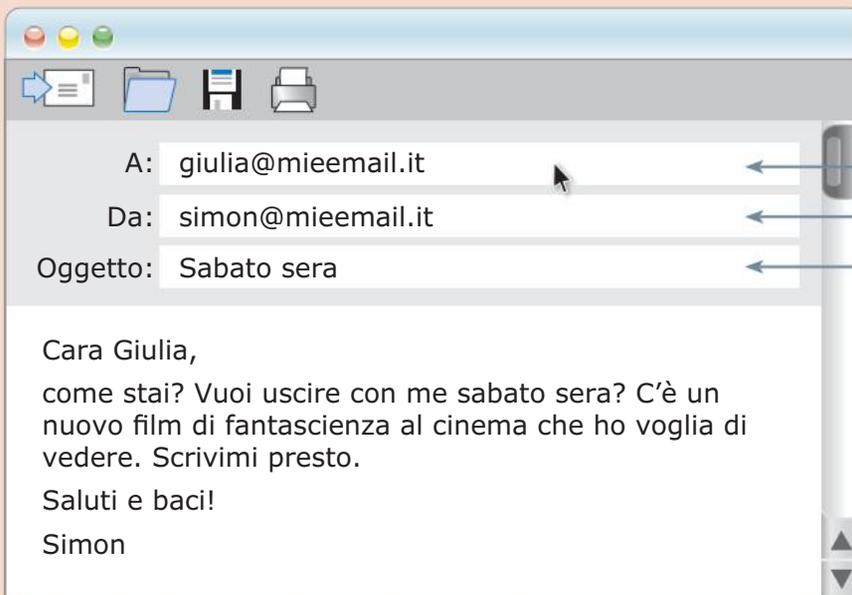


### Investigazione Culturale



## L'email

Emailing in Italian is very similar to emailing in English. Here is some vocabulary to help you write emails in Italian.



### Glossario

**l'email (f)** (the email)

**A:** (To:)

**Da:** (From:)

**Oggetto:** (Subject:)

**caro/a** dear

**scrivimi presto**  
write soon

**saluti** regards  
**baci** kisses

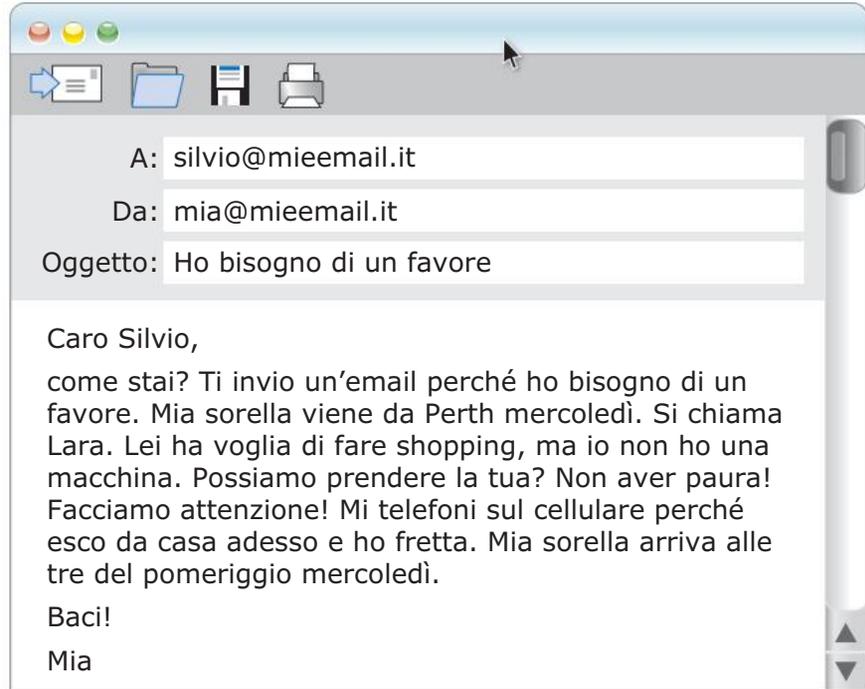
## Cosa pensi ?

What do you think about communication technologies? Which device/format (phone, email, online chatting etc.) do you prefer to use to communicate with family and friends? Do you think this type of technology is more important to younger people than older people? Why or why not?

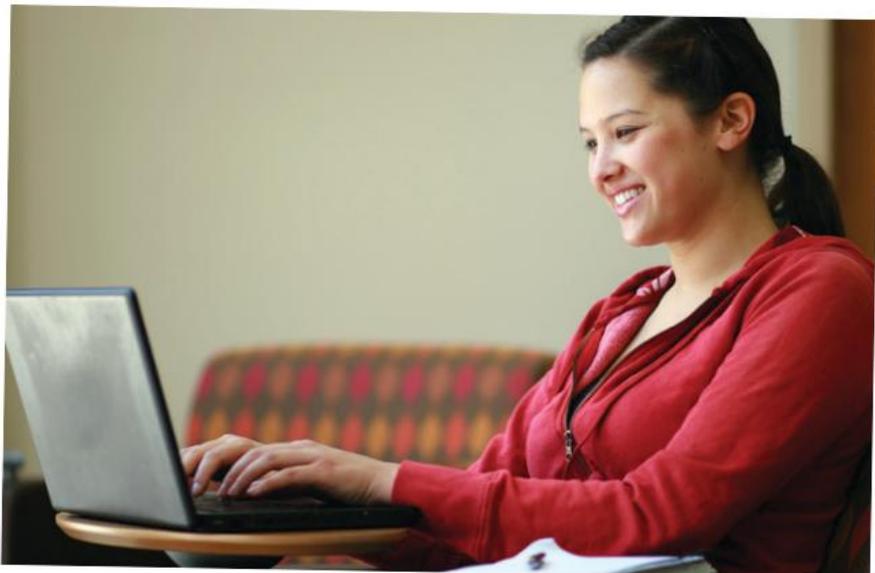


## Attività 2.4

Read the email and answer the questions that follow, in Italian, in your exercise book.



- 1 Chi scrive l'email?
- 2 Perché scrive l'email?
- 3 Come si chiama sua sorella?
- 4 Cosa ha voglia di fare sua sorella?
- 5 Che cosa chiede Mia a Silvio?
- 6 Quando arriva la sorella di Mia?



# Ripasso

- 1 Copy the table into your exercise book and match the Italian preposition with its English translation by drawing a line between the two.

|     |         |
|-----|---------|
| da  | at/to   |
| a   | in      |
| con | of      |
| per | from/by |
| in  | for     |
| di  | with    |

- 2 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a I come to school on that train.
- b You (plural) go out with those cousins.
- c You (singular) don't say 'goodbye'.
- d I say that I am sleepy.
- e Zoe and I come from London.
- f Miriam and Phillip go out with their friends.
- g Joe tells his friend that he is buying that T-shirt.
- h They say that they are thirsty.

- 3 Match these Italian sentences with their English translations. Write the corresponding letter of each Italian sentence in the boxes beside the English translations.

- a Avete fame?  They are thirsty because they are doing athletics.
- b Loro hanno sete perché fanno atletica.  Dear me! We are cold!
- c Quando ho caldo, vado in piscina.  You have to sleep. It's 10.00 p.m. and you're sleepy.
- d Mamma mia! Abbiamo freddo!  Are you (plural) hungry?
- e Devi dormire. Sono le ventidue e hai sonno.  They are wrong, it's seven thirty.
- f Hanno torto, sono le sette e mezza.  When I'm hot, I go to the swimming pool.

- 4 Translate the following expressions into their Italian equivalents. Then, with a partner, take it in turns to say them to each other in Italian. Be dramatic!

- a Oh my gosh!
- b Good luck!
- c Cool!
- d About time!
- e I'm starving!
- f You're great!

- 5 With a partner, create an Italian telephone conversation lasting about a minute in length. Use the verbs **dire**, **venire** and **uscire** as often as you can.

- 6 Write a short email to a friend asking if he/she would like to go out on Saturday night. Ask them to arrive at a meeting point (at home, in the town centre etc.) at 7.00 p.m. and to tell you if they can come by Tuesday afternoon.

Look back at the examples of emails in this chapter for help with phrases and vocabulary.

# Riassunto

## Now you can:

### use the irregular verbs **dire**, **venire** and **uscire**

|          | <b>dire</b>                                  | <b>to say/to tell</b>                              |
|----------|--|--|
| singular | (io) dico<br>(tu) dici<br>(lui/lei) dice     | I say/tell<br>you say/tell<br>he/she/it says/tells |
| plural   | (noi) diciamo<br>(voi) dite<br>(loro) dicono | we say/tell<br>you say/tell<br>they say/tell       |

|          | <b>venire</b>                                   | <b>to come</b>                        |
|----------|---|---------------------------------------|
| singular | (io) vengo<br>(tu) vieni<br>(lui/lei) viene     | I come<br>you come<br>he/she/it comes |
| plural   | (noi) veniamo<br>(voi) venite<br>(loro) vengono | we come<br>you come<br>they come      |

|          | <b>uscire</b>                                  | <b>to go out</b>                             |
|----------|--|--|
| singular | (io) esco<br>(tu) esci<br>(lui/lei) esce       | I go out<br>you go out<br>he/she/it goes out |
| plural   | (noi) usciamo<br>(voi) uscite<br>(loro) escono | we go out<br>you go out<br>they go out       |

### use the prepositions **da**, **di**, **in**, **a**, **con** and **per**

|            |         |
|------------|---------|
| <b>da</b>  | from/by |
| <b>di</b>  | of      |
| <b>in</b>  | in      |
| <b>a</b>   | at/to   |
| <b>con</b> | with    |
| <b>per</b> | for     |

### use some common Italian expressions

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>Accidenti!</b>  | Damn!/Oh my gosh!                                       |
| <b>In bocca al lupo!</b>                                 | Break a leg!/Good luck!                                 |
| <b>Crepi!</b>  | Thanks! (Only in response to <b>In bocca al lupo!</b> ) |
| <b>Era ora!</b>  | About time!   |
| <b>Fico!</b>   | Cool!   |
| <b>Ho una fame da lupo!</b>                              | I'm starving!   |
| <b>Mamma mia!</b>  | Dear me!  |
| <b>Mi piace da morire!</b>                               | I'm mad about him/her/it!                               |
| <b>Non ci ho visto più.</b>                              | I lost my temper.                                       |
| <b>Non m'importa.</b>                                    | I don't care.   |
| <b>Non vedo l'ora di</b><br>(+ infinitive)...            | I can't wait until ...                                  |
| <b>Sei forte!</b>  | You're great!   |
| <b>Sono nei guai.</b>                                    | I'm in a pickle.  |
| <b>Quando il gatto non c'è</b><br><b>i topi ballano.</b> | When the cat is away<br>the mice will play.             |

### use the various forms of the adjective **quello**

| Masculine     |               |   | Feminine      |               |   |
|---------------|---------------|---|---------------|---------------|---|
| Singular      | Plural        | Use   | Singular      | Plural        | Use   |
| <b>quel</b>   | <b>quei</b>   | Used before nouns beginning with a consonant<br>(e.g. <b>quel ragazzo</b> , <b>quei ragazzi</b> )   | <b>quella</b> | <b>quelle</b> | Used before nouns beginning with a consonant<br>(e.g. <b>quella ragazza</b> , <b>quelle ragazze</b> ) |
| <b>quell'</b> | <b>quegli</b> | Used before nouns beginning with a vowel<br>(e.g. <b>quell'amico</b> , <b>quegli amici</b> )  | <b>quell'</b> | <b>quelle</b> | Used before nouns beginning with a vowel<br>(e.g. <b>quell'amica</b> , <b>quelle amiche</b> )         |
| <b>quello</b> | <b>quegli</b> | Used before nouns beginning with z or s plus a consonant— <b>st</b> , <b>sp</b> , <b>sc</b> , <b>sn</b> etc.<br>(e.g. <b>quello sport</b> , <b>quegli sport</b> ) |               |               |   |

# Volete ascoltare la musica?

## You will learn how to:

- talk about the weather
- ask for and give the date
- use the verbs **potere** and **volere**
- offer, accept and decline invitations
- talk about music and use the verb **suonare**
- use conjunctions and interrogatives to make you sound more fluent.



Vasco Rossi



Laura Pausini

# Andiamo al festival



The **Atletitalia** competition winners are hanging out in a Roman **piazza** when a poster for a music event sparks their interest. Melanie's host brother from **Genova**, Paolo, has come to **Roma** to visit the group.



Guardate ragazzi!  
È un poster per un  
festival di musica!

Che bello! Mi  
piace molto  
la musica.

Anche a  
me. Quando  
è questo  
festival?

1

Ragazzi, che  
giorno è oggi?

È il primo maggio... E già!  
Oggi è la festa del lavoro! C'è il  
concerto gratis in Piazza San  
Giovanni.

Ma allora è stasera! Voglio andare a  
questo concerto. Melanie, tu vuoi venire?

Ma certo, canta Tiziano Ferro. È proprio stupendo! È  
meraviglioso! Jessica, vuoi venire anche tu?

2

3

Sì, voglio venire, ma non posso. Stasera sono occupata.  
Devo uscire con la famiglia che mi ospita. Mi dispiace.

Ragazzi, sapete che  
questo è un concerto  
importante. Adesso  
mando un SMS.  
Forse vuole venire  
anche la famiglia.  
Loro s'interessano di  
progetti ambientali.

Gli artisti suonano per raccogliere  
offerte per aiutare l'ambiente.

4

5

Ottima idea, Jessica! Melanie, vuoi venire a casa mia adesso?

Mi dispiace Stephen, ma non posso. Voglio prepararmi per il concerto. È all'aperto, vero? Che tempo fa stasera? Piove? Fa freddo?

Non credo. Secondo le previsioni del tempo sul mio telefonino fa bel tempo.

6

Ma Melanie, è un concerto per l'ambiente, non è una sfilata di moda.

Ascolta Paolo, se mi vede Tiziano voglio essere alla moda ed elegante.

7

Va bene. Allora ragazzi, ci incontriamo stasera verso le cinque davanti al Bar Michelangelo?

Va bene. A stasera allora. Ciao ragazzi!

8

A più tardi! Ognuno deve fare la sua parte per l'ambiente!

## ABC Glossario

### nomi

**l'ambiente**

the environment

**gli artisti**

the (music) artists

**la festa del lavoro**

Labour Day

**il festival di musica**

the music festival

**le offerte**

the donations

**le previsioni del tempo**

the weather forecast

**i progetti**

the projects

**la sfilata di moda**

the fashion show

**la terra**

the Earth, the ground

### aggettivi

**ambientale**

environmental

**elegante**

elegant

**importante**

important

**meraviglioso/a**

wonderful, marvellous

**salvo/a**

safe, unharmed





## Cosa pensi?

- 1 Look at the poster advertising the music festival in the cartoon story. What do you think the saying '**Per una terra sana e salva**' means?
- 2 Jessica says that her host family is very interested in environmental issues. Are you interested in environmental issues too? What do you do in your everyday life to help protect the environment?

**sano/a** sound, healthy  
**stupendo/a** splendid, terrific  
**vero/a** true

### avverbi

**davanti (a)** in front (of)  
**gratis** free  
**proprio** really  
**stasera** this evening, tonight

### verbi

**aiutare** to help/to assist  
**non credo** I don't believe so (from **credere**—to believe)  
**essere alla moda** to be in fashion  
**guardate** you (plural) look (from **guardare**—to look/to watch)  
**non posso** I can't (from **potere**—to be able to)  
**prepararmi** I prepare myself/I get myself ready (from **prepararsi**—to prepare oneself)  
**raccogliere** to collect  
**sapete** you (plural) know (from **sapere**—to know [a fact])  
**s'interessano di** they are interested in (from **interessarsi**—to be interested in)  
**suonano** they play (a musical instrument) (from **suonare**—to play)

### altre espressioni e parole

**all'aperto** in the open (air)  
**anche a me** me too  
**che bello!** how lovely!  
**che tempo fa?** what's the weather like?  
**e già!** of course!  
**fa bel tempo** it's nice weather  
**fa freddo?** is it cold?  
**mi dispiace** I'm sorry  
**ognuno deve fare la sua parte** everyone must do their part  
**piove?** is it raining?  
**sono occupato/a** I'm busy  
**verso** around

## Attività 3.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- |   |  |   |   |
|---|--|---|---|
| 1 | The music festival is being held on 1 May.                         | V | F |
| 2 | Melanie thinks that Tiziano Ferro is a wonderful singer.           | V | F |
| 3 | Jessica wants to go to the concert because it is for a good cause. | V | F |
| 4 | Paolo wants to be fashionably dressed for the concert.             | V | F |
| 5 | Stephen says they should meet behind Bar Michelangelo.             | V | F |



### Investigazione Linguistica



## Che tempo fa?

Did you notice that in the cartoon story Melanie and Nathan were talking about what the weather would be like at the concert? Talking about the weather is a good icebreaker that you can use anywhere and in many conversations.

To ask what the weather is like in Italian, use the question:

**Che tempo fa?** (What's the weather like?) Here are some ways to describe the weather in Italian.



**Fa bel tempo.** It's nice weather.

**Fa caldo.** It's hot.

**C'è il sole.** It's sunny.



**Fa brutto tempo.** It's terrible weather.

**Fa freddo.** It's cold.



**C'è vento.** It's windy.



**Piove.** It's raining.



**Neve.** It's snowing.

Che tempo fa stasera?  
Piove? Fa freddo?



### Handy hint

Remember, the word **tempo** is not only used in reference to the weather; it is also used to describe time (e.g. **È tempo di andare a casa!**).



Neve a Milano.





Piove a Genova.

When talking about the weather it is also useful to know **le stagioni** (the seasons) in Italian:

- l'estate** (f) summer
- l'autunno** autumn
- l'inverno** winter
- la primavera** spring

You can use **le stagioni** as extra vocabulary to spice up your conversations about the weather.

**Esempio** **Fa brutto tempo quest'inverno. Non mi piace quando piove e c'è vento.**



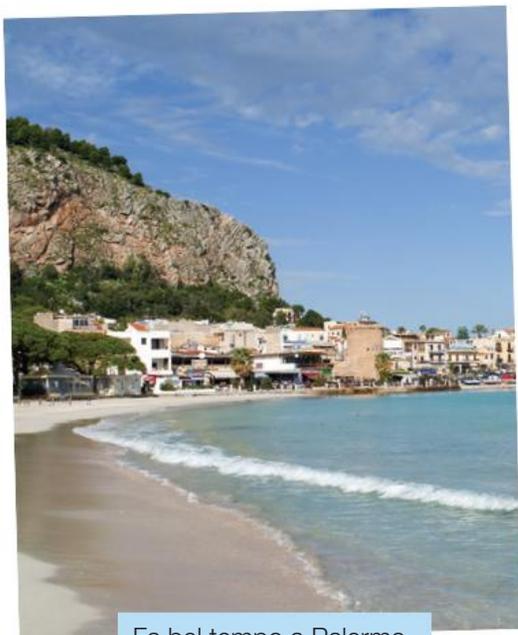
### Tocca a te!

Write a weather report, in Italian, for the week to come in your home city/town to present to the class. Remember to include a description of the weather for each day. You can make up your forecasts. Be sure to deliver your report in true weather-presenter style!

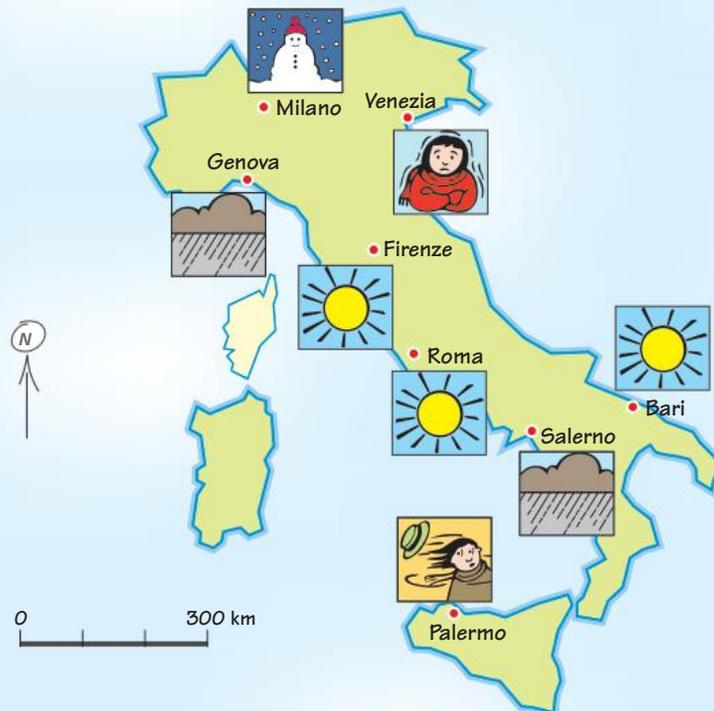
## Attività 3.2

Look at the weather map of Italy below and with a partner, take turns to say what the weather forecast is for each city.

**Esempio** **A Milano nevicata. Fa freddo!**



Fa bel tempo a Palermo.





## Investigazione Linguistica

### Che giorno è? (What's the date?)

Knowing how to talk about dates is an important skill, especially if you are organising to meet someone on a day in the near future. To say the date in Italian, you simply use the number of the day preceded by the definite article **il** or **l'**, followed by the month of the year you are referring to.

**Esempi** **Oggi è il tredici agosto.** Today is the thirteenth of August.  
**Il mio compleanno è il due novembre.** My birthday is the second of November.

For the eighth and eleventh day of any month, use **l'** because **otto** and **undici** begin with a vowel.

**Esempi** **Oggi è l'otto giugno.** Today is the eighth of June.  
**Domani è l'undici settembre.** Tomorrow is the eleventh of September.

For the first day of the month, use **il primo**.

**Esempio** **Domani è il primo aprile.** Tomorrow is the first of April.

### Handy hint

Remember, the days of the week and the months of the year are not written with capital letters in Italian. This is because only proper nouns (names of people and places) and words that start a sentence are capitalised in Italian.



## Tocca a te!

With a partner, take turns to ask and answer the questions below.

**Esempio** **A:** Che giorno è oggi?  
**B:** Oggi è il ventotto febbraio.

- 1 Che giorno è oggi?
- 2 Che giorno è domani?
- 3 Che giorno è domenica?
- 4 Che giorno è l'ultimo giorno del mese?

### Handy hint

Do you remember what the months of the year are in Italian? Below they are written out of order in Italian only. Use the language skills you have learnt so far to look for cognates and to figure out which month is which.

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| gennaio  | giugno    |
| febbraio | settembre |
| maggio   | marzo     |
| aprile   | dicembre  |
| agosto   | ottobre   |
| luglio   | novembre  |

### Attività 3.3



Listen to the audio and number the dates below in the order that you hear them. The first one has been done for you.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 il tredici marzo | <input type="checkbox"/> l'undici dicembre     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> il dieci febbraio             | <input type="checkbox"/> il primo novembre     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> l'otto agosto                 | <input type="checkbox"/> il venticinque giugno |



## Feste italiane

Every country has special **feste** (holidays) on its calendar that reflect important moments in history.

In Italy, **il sei gennaio**, known as **la festa della Befana**, is almost as important as **il giorno di Natale** (Christmas Day) for young children. Legend has it that **la Befana** (an old woman) brings **regali** (presents) to the good children and **carbone** (coal) to the naughty children. In Italy, **la Befana** is almost as popular as **Babbo Natale** (Santa Claus).

**La festa della donna** (International Women's Day) is celebrated on **l'otto marzo** in Italy and all over the world. On this day, Italian men give flowers, traditionally mimosas, to their girlfriends and wives.

**Il diciannove marzo** is the day that Italians celebrate **la festa di San Giuseppe** (Saint Joseph's feast day). On this day, many families cook traditional treats like **le zeppole**, a type of doughnut. This day is also celebrated as **la festa del papà** (Father's Day) in Italy.

**Il venticinque aprile** is a national holiday when Italians celebrate **la festa della Liberazione** (Liberation Day), which marks the end of the Second World War in 1945.

The first great festival of the warmer months in Italy takes place on **il primo maggio**. This national holiday is known as **la festa del lavoro** (Labour Day) and the highlight of the day is the free open-air music concert held in Rome's **Piazza San Giovanni**.

## L'onomastico

If you look at an Italian calendar, you will notice that many days correspond to a person's name. Your **onomastico** is your name day. It is almost like a second birthday. So, for example, if your name is Maria, your **onomastico** would be **il primo gennaio**, and if your name is Giacomo (James or Jack), yours would be **il tre maggio**.

### Cosa pensi ?

What **feste** do you celebrate at home that are as important to you and your society as they are to Italians? You would have noticed that Italians celebrate **la festa della Liberazione** on the same day that Australians celebrate Anzac Day. Do you think these dates have anything in common?

### Attività 3.4



In addition to the dates already mentioned, there are many more festivals and celebrations that take place throughout the year in Italy. Use the Internet and other library resources (with help from your teacher) to create a large class calendar with the dates, descriptions and images of some important Italian events. Here are a few significant dates to get you started.

- Capodanno** (New Year's Day) 1 January
- Ferragosto** (Feast of the Assumption) 15 August
- Ognissanti** (All Saints' Day) 1 November



la Befana



le zeppole



## Modal verbs: potere and volere

When you need to accept or refuse an invitation in Italian, it is most likely that you will use one of the modal verbs: **dovere**, **potere** or **volere**. Remember, you have already learnt about **dovere** in Chapter 1.

Modal verbs are very handy to know because they can help you express what you *have to*, *can* or *want* to do. In English, we often use 'have to' or 'must' (obligation or requirement), 'should' (recommendation), 'can/could' (ability, possibility, permission) and 'may/might' (possibility or permission). **Potere** and **volere** are the Italian equivalents of expressing what you can/are *able* to do and *want* to do.

### Potere

|          | potere         | to be able to        |
|----------|----------------|----------------------|
| singular | (io) posso     | I am able to         |
|          | (tu) puoi      | you are able to      |
|          | (lui/lei) può  | he/she/it is able to |
| plural   | (noi) possiamo | we are able to       |
|          | (voi) potete   | you are able to      |
|          | (loro) possono | they are able to     |

### Volere

|          | volere          | to want to         |
|----------|-----------------|--------------------|
| singular | (io) voglio     | I want to          |
|          | (tu) vuoi       | you want to        |
|          | (lui/lei) vuole | he/she/it wants to |
| plural   | (noi) vogliamo  | we want to         |
|          | (voi) volete    | you want to        |
|          | (loro) vogliono | they want to       |

Remember, modal verbs are followed by another verb in the infinitive.

**Esempi** Possiamo uscire stasera.

We can/are able to go out tonight.

**Volete dire qualcosa?**

Do you (plural) want to say something?

To make them negative, simply put **non** in front of the modal verb.

**Esempi** Non posso giocare a tennis oggi.

I can't/am unable to play tennis today.

**Non voglio suonare il violino.**

I don't want to play the violin.

Sì, voglio venire, ma non posso.



### Handy hint

The conjugations for the verbs **potere** and **volere** are irregular, so you'll have to learn them by heart if you want to be able to use them properly. What other irregular verbs do you know?

## Attività 3.5

Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- 1 You want to play soccer.
- 2 She doesn't want to go to school.
- 3 We can go out on Friday.
- 4 They can't say my name.
- 5 You (plural) want to go to the concert.
- 6 I don't want to study today. I can study tomorrow!

## Attività 3.6



Listen to the audio and identify the modal verb used in each sentence. Then translate the sentences into English in your exercise book.



## Investigazione Linguistica



### Offer, accept and decline invitations

You can see from the examples of festivals and holidays mentioned in the chapter that Italians, just like Australians, like to go out and celebrate important dates. Below is a list of common phrases that you can use to invite someone somewhere, and to accept or decline invitations.

| Italian expression               | English translation              |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Vuoi...con me?                   | Do you want to ... with me?      |
| ...andare al cinema...           | ... go to the movies ...         |
| ...andare alla festa...          | ... go to the party ...          |
| ...andare in spiaggia...         | ... go to the beach ...          |
| ...andare al concerto...         | ... go to the concert ...        |
| ...andare alla partita...        | ... go to the game ...           |
| Sì, voglio andare/venire con te. | Yes, I want to go/come with you. |
| Non posso andare/venire con te.  | I can't go/come with you.        |
| Mi dispiace, ma...               | I'm sorry, but ...               |
| ...sono occupato/a.              | ... I'm busy.                    |
| ...sono stanco/a.                | ... I'm tired.                   |
| ...sto male.                     | ... I'm sick.                    |
| ...devo fare i compiti.          | ... I have homework to do.       |
| ...devo lavarmi i capelli.       | ... I have to wash my hair.      |

Melanie,  
vuoi venire  
a casa mia  
adesso?

Mi dispiace  
Stephen, ma non  
posso. Voglio  
prepararmi per il  
concerto.





## Tocca a te!

With a partner, take turns inviting each other out in Italian. You could be going to a party, to the movies, playing soccer etc. Accept or decline the invitations, giving good reasons for your answers. You can use the list on page 46 to help you. Can you devise some of your own invitations and responses?

**Esempio A: Vuoi andare a pescare con me?**

Do you want to go fishing with me?

**B: Mi dispiace, ma non posso. Non mi piace l'odore del pesce.**

I'm sorry, but I can't. I don't like the smell of fish.



## Investigazione Culturale



### La musica italiana

Italy has a proud tradition when it comes to music. Not only has Italy produced some longstanding traditional forms of folk music and dance, but it also enabled the birth and development of opera in the late sixteenth century.

If you study music, you will find that most of the notation is in Italian. Expressions such as **allegro** (fast tempo) **andante** (moderately slowly and evenly), **piano** (softly) and **sotto voce** (low tones) are directions on how to play the written music.

You might be familiar with some famous Italian songs such as '**Volare**', '**O sole mio**' and '**Nessun dorma**', which over the years have been re-made and sung by many musicians, not just Italians. Luciano Pavarotti, an internationally recognised Italian opera tenor, was famous for his fine voice and rendition of '**Nessun dorma**'.



Un concerto d'opera italiano con Luciano Pavarotti

### Cosa pensi ?

Many European songwriters and performers, not just Italians, write and perform more and more of their music in English rather than their native language. Why do you think this is? Do you think this is a good thing or a bad thing?

## Cosa pensi ?

Explore the Internet to research modern Italian artists and bands. Compare their music with the music you like to listen to. Is it similar? Do you like it? Can you understand the words? Now share your favourite Italian tunes with your classmates and friends!

Traditional folk music is also a large part of Italy's musical roots. Folk music is born from local influences, which means that there isn't solely one recognisable style; there are many types that are characteristic of different Italian regions.

**La tarantella**, for example, is a fast paced southern Italian group dance you will often see performed at celebrations in southern Italy. It is believed that **la tarantella** is linked with a disease from the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries called tarantism—a condition that reportedly caused hysteria in people if they were bitten by a tarantula spider. Victims were supposedly cured of the disease by frenetic dancing.

Italy also organises and hosts well-known music festivals including **il Festival di Sanremo** and **il Festivalbar**, which have launched the careers of some Italian singers and songwriters like Giorgia, Laura Pausini, Eros Ramazzotti, Vasco Rossi, Zucchero and, more recently, Tiziano Ferro, Elisa and Anna Tatangelo.



Tiziano Ferro



Anna Tatangelo

## Handy hint

Don't confuse **suonare** and **giocare (a)**. They both mean 'to play' in Italian, but **suonare** means to play a musical instrument whereas **giocare (a)** means to play a sport, a game or with a toy.



## Investigazione Linguistica

### Suonare

**Suonare** means 'to play' in Italian and you can use it for references to musical instruments.

**Esempio** **Io suono la chitarra acustica.**

I play the acoustic guitar.

# Parliamo di musica

Let's talk about music

Here are lists of Italian words for music related terms, different types of music and musical instruments.

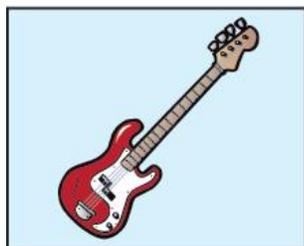
## Termini musicali

|                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| il/la cantante  | the singer ( <i>m/f</i> )   |
| la canzone      | the song                    |
| il/la DJ        | the DJ ( <i>m/f</i> )       |
| il gruppo       | the band                    |
| la melodia      | the melody                  |
| il/la musicista | the musician ( <i>m/f</i> ) |
| le parole       | the lyrics                  |
| il ritmo        | the rhythm                  |
| lo strumento    | the musical instrument      |
| il tempo        | the tempo, the beat         |

## Tipi di musica

|                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| la musica classica    | classical music  |
| la musica elettronica | electronic music |
| la musica jazz        | jazz music       |
| la musica pop         | pop music        |
| la musica rap         | rap music        |
| la musica rock        | rock music       |

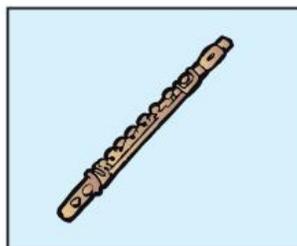
## Gli strumenti musicali



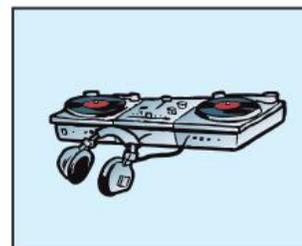
**il basso**  
the bass guitar



**la chitarra acustica**  
the acoustic guitar



**il flauto**  
the flute



**i piatti**  
the turntable



**la batteria**  
the drums



**la chitarra elettrica**  
the electric guitar



**il pianoforte**  
the piano



**il sassofono**  
the saxophone



**la tastiera**  
the keyboard



**la tromba**  
the trumpet



**il violino**  
the violin

## Attività 3.7

Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>1</b> I play the drums.             | <b>4</b> Jay, do you play the saxophone? |
| <b>2</b> We don't play the trumpet.    | <b>5</b> Beck plays the flute.           |
| <b>3</b> John and Sara play the piano. | <b>6</b> Jason and I play the violin.    |

## Attività 3.8

Use the phrases in the following grid to create a dialogue with a partner. You will need to choose phrases from the options in each row and column. Remember to listen to your partner's answers before choosing your responses.

|          |                              |   |  |
|----------|------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>A</b> | Che tipo di musica ti piace? |   |  |
| <b>B</b> | Mi piace                     | la musica pop.<br>la musica elettronica.<br>la musica rock.   |  |
| <b>A</b> | Perché ti piace              | la musica pop?<br>la musica elettronica?<br>la musica rock?   |  |
| <b>B</b> | Mi piace<br>Mi piacciono     | la melodia di questa musica.<br>il ritmo di questa musica.<br>le parole delle canzoni di questa musica. | Suoni uno strumento?   |
| <b>A</b> | Sì,<br>No,                   | suono<br>ma voglio suonare  | il flauto.<br>la tromba.<br>la chitarra elettrica.<br>la tastiera.<br>E tu? Suoni uno strumento? |
| <b>B</b> | Sì,<br>No,                   | suono<br>però mio papà suona  | il basso.<br>il pianoforte.<br>il sassofono.<br>la batteria.                                     |



### Tocca a te!

As a class, set aside some time in a lesson to conduct a class survey, in Italian, about music. Use the questions below to help you. Record your results in Italian, detailing the people you surveyed and their answers. Collate everyone's results to find out the most popular response in your class.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>1</b> Ti piace la musica?              | <b>4</b> Qual è il tuo gruppo preferito? |
| <b>2</b> Che tipo di musica ti piace?     | <b>5</b> Suoni uno strumento? Quale?     |
| <b>3</b> Chi è il tuo cantante preferito? | <b>6</b> Ti piace cantare?               |



## Conjunctions

Look at Paolo and Melanie's chat room dialogue below.



Melanie: Paolo, suoni uno strumento **oppure** no?



Paolo: Sì, suono la batteria con il gruppo di mio cugino, **ma** voglio **anche** suonare la chitarra elettrica **perché** è uno strumento molto popolare **e quindi** posso essere famoso.

Notice how Paolo's response to Melanie's question is detailed and flows well through the use of the words in bold. To help you improve your writing and speaking skills, use these handy little words to link your sentences. They are known as 'conjunctions', or 'joining words'.

|               |                    |               |                          |
|---------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| <b>allora</b> | in that case, then | <b>oppure</b> | or, otherwise            |
| <b>anche</b>  | also               | <b>perché</b> | because                  |
| <b>e</b>      | and                | <b>perciò</b> | so                       |
| <b>ma</b>     | but                | <b>però</b>   | however                  |
| <b>o</b>      | or                 | <b>quindi</b> | therefore, so, well then |

### Handy hint

Remember that **perché** means 'because'. It also means 'why?' You should be able to tell which meaning is intended by the context of the word within the sentence and the punctuation.

### Attività 3.4

Complete the sentences with an appropriate conjunction. You may be able to use more than one conjunction for certain sentences, so try to use a variety in your answers if possible.

- Vorrei uscire con te stasera, \_\_\_\_\_ non posso venire.
- Jesse, non puoi uscire \_\_\_\_\_ deve fare i compiti.
- Rafael \_\_\_\_\_ Rosie vogliono mangiare.
- Fa bel tempo, \_\_\_\_\_ voglio andare a giocare a calcio.
- Piove, \_\_\_\_\_ devo stare a casa.
- Samantha vuole comprare i jeans blu \_\_\_\_\_ la gonna nera.



## Interrogatives

A great way to figure out what people are asking you in Italian is by becoming familiar with words that usually start a question—these are known as ‘interrogatives’. Learn and practise saying the below list of interrogatives. They will help you become quite a conversationalist!

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| <b>che cosa (che cos'è/che cosa sono)</b> | what (what is/what are)    |
| <b>chi</b>                                | who                        |
| <b>come</b>                               | how                        |
| <b>dove (dov'è/dove sono)</b>             | where (where is/where are) |
| <b>perché</b>                             | why                        |
| <b>quale/quali (qual è/quali sono)</b>    | which (which is/which are) |
| <b>quando</b>                             | when                       |
| <b>quanto/a/i/e</b>                       | how many                   |

### Handy hint

**Quale** becomes **qual** when followed by a vowel. (e.g. **Qual è...**)



### Attività 3.10

Complete the sentences with an appropriate interrogative. You may be able to use more than one interrogative for some sentences, so try to use a variety in your answers if possible.

- \_\_\_\_\_ anni ha tuo fratello?
- \_\_\_\_\_ è quel ragazzo simpatico?
- Devo essere più forte. \_\_\_\_\_ la palestra?
- \_\_\_\_\_ vieni a casa mia? Alle tre e mezza o alle quattro di pomeriggio?
- \_\_\_\_\_ non può suonare il flauto?
- \_\_\_\_\_ fai domani?

# Ripasso

- 1 You are planning a small outdoor concert at school to raise money **per aiutare l'ambiente**. Read the weather forecast for the week ahead and decide which day is the best to hold the concert. Provide reasons for your choice.



**lunedì**

Fa caldo.  
C'è il sole.



**martedì**

Fa bel tempo di mattina.  
Nel pomeriggio, piove.



**mercoledì**

C'è il sole.  
Fa molto caldo.



**giovedì**

Fa freddo e c'è vento.



**venerdì**

Fa bel tempo.



**sabato**

Fa brutto tempo.



**domenica**

Piove. Non fa molto freddo.

- 2 Copy the table into your exercise book and, in Italian, write the dates for the list of holidays and celebrations. Then order them chronologically. The first date has been written for you as an example.

|   | Holiday/celebration        | Date                    | Order |
|---|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------|
| 1 | il giorno di Natale        | il venticinque dicembre |       |
| 2 | la festa del lavoro        |                         |       |
| 3 | la festa della donna       |                         |       |
| 4 | la festa della Befana      |                         |       |
| 5 | la festa della Liberazione |                         |       |
| 6 | la festa di San Giuseppe   |                         |       |

- 3 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.
- Do you want to go out on Saturday night?
  - I want to go to the concert, but I can't.
  - I like classical music, but I prefer pop music.
  - Laura plays the piano and the acoustic guitar.
  - Do you play an instrument?
  - Do you (plural) want to go to the beach tomorrow?

- 4 In pairs, prepare a question and answer dialogue based on the following scenario:

Your friend invites you out often. You would like to go out with him/her, but you can't. Decline your friend's invitations, providing good reasons with your responses.

When you finish, swap roles with your partner. You could use the below invitation examples as a starting point.

- Vuoi andare in spiaggia questo pomeriggio?**
- C'è un concerto in piazza stasera. Puoi venire con me?**

# Riassunto

## Now you can:

### ask for and give the date

|                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Che giorno è?                      | What's the date?                    |
| Oggi è <b>il tredici agosto</b> .  | Today is the thirteenth of August.  |
| Oggi è <b>l'otto giugno</b> .      | Today is the eighth of June.        |
| Oggi è <b>l'undici settembre</b> . | Today is the eleventh of September. |
| Oggi è <b>il primo aprile</b> .    | Today is the first of April.        |

### talk about the weather

|                  |                          |                   |               |
|------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| Che tempo fa?    | What's the weather like? | <b>Fa freddo.</b> | It's cold.    |
| Fa bel tempo.    | It's nice weather.       | <b>C'è vento.</b> | It's windy.   |
| Fa caldo.        | It's hot.                | <b>Piove.</b>     | It's raining. |
| C'è il sole.     | It's sunny.              | <b>Nevica.</b>    | It's snowing. |
| Fa brutto tempo. | It's terrible weather.   |                   |               |

### use the verbs potere and volere

|          | potere   | to be able to   |
|----------|--|---|
| singular | (io) posso<br>(tu) puoi<br>(lui/lei) può         | I am able to<br>you are able to<br>he/she/it is able to |
| plural   | (noi) possiamo<br>(voi) potete<br>(loro) possono | we are able to<br>you are able to<br>they are able to   |

|          | volere  | to want to                                     |
|----------|---|--|
| singular | (io) voglio<br>(tu) vuoi<br>(lui/lei) vuole       | I want to<br>you want to<br>he/she/it wants to |
| plural   | (noi) vogliamo<br>(voi) volete<br>(loro) vogliono | we want to<br>you want to<br>they want to      |

### talk about music and use the verb suonare

|                              |                     |                                       |                             |
|------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>il basso</b>              | the bass guitar     | <b>il sassofono</b>                   | the saxophone               |
| <b>la batteria</b>           | the drums           | <b>la tastiera</b>                    | the keyboard                |
| <b>la chitarra acustica</b>  | the acoustic guitar | <b>la tromba</b>                      | the trumpet                 |
| <b>la chitarra elettrica</b> | the electric guitar | <b>il violino</b>                     | the violin                  |
| <b>il flauto</b>             | the flute           |                                       |                             |
| <b>il pianoforte</b>         | the piano           | <b>Io suono la chitarra acustica.</b> | I play the acoustic guitar. |
| <b>i piatti</b>              | the turntable       |                                       |                             |

### use conjunctions and interrogatives to make you sound more fluent

#### Conjunctions

|               |                          |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| <b>allora</b> | in that case, then       |
| <b>anche</b>  | also                     |
| <b>e</b>      | and                      |
| <b>ma</b>     | but                      |
| <b>o</b>      | or                       |
| <b>oppure</b> | or, otherwise            |
| <b>perché</b> | because                  |
| <b>perciò</b> | so                       |
| <b>però</b>   | however                  |
| <b>quindi</b> | therefore, so, well then |

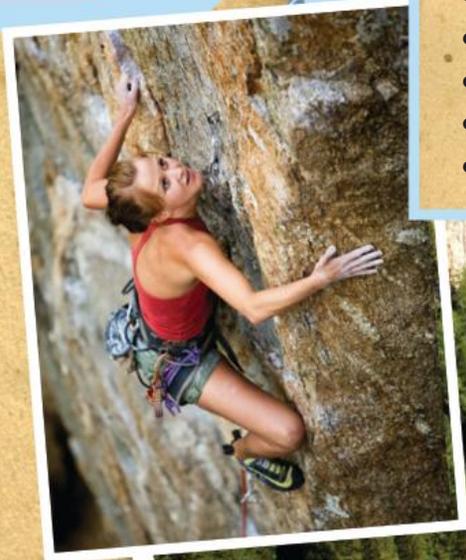
#### Interrogatives

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| <b>che cosa</b><br>(che cos'è/che cosa sono) | what (what is/what are)    |
| <b>chi</b>                                   | who                        |
| <b>come</b>                                  | how                        |
| <b>dove</b> (dov'è/dove sono)                | where (where is/where are) |
| <b>perché</b>                                | why                        |
| <b>quale/quali</b><br>(qual è/quali sono)    | which (which is/which are) |
| <b>quando</b>                                | when                       |
| <b>quanto/a/i/e</b>                          | how many                   |

# Salviamo la terra!

## You will learn how to:

- use the verbs **sapere**, **conoscere**, **dare** and **preferire**
- talk about the environment and ecotourism
- compare different things, qualities and actions
- use articulated prepositions
- identify and discuss extreme sports
- use Italian gestures as linguistic short cuts.



# Il campeggio dei gladiatori



While visiting **Roma**, Paolo accompanies the Australian students on a visit to a travel agency, where they are looking for information about different sports they could try on a trip to the **Toscana** region.

**1** Ragazzi, guardate cosa possiamo fare al campeggio dei gladiatori. Ci sono moltissimi sport, e anche gli sport estremi! Possiamo fare arrampicata, parapendio, windsurf... Favoloso!

Bel divertimento! Dove si trova questo campeggio?

È sull'Isola d'Elba. L'isola fa parte del Parco Nazionale dell'Arcipelago Toscano.

Non conosco quest'isola. È lontana?

Ma sei pazzo! Non voglio fare surf nell'acqua fredda! Soltanto se fa molto caldo...

**2** Ma no, non è più di un'ora da Piombino in Toscana. Prendete il traghetto e arrivate! Fa sempre bel tempo sull'isola. Potete fare surf nel mare!

Ma non capisco perché dobbiamo fare gli sport estremi. A che cosa servono? Non voglio farmi male.

**3**

Gli sport estremi sono molto popolari. Aiutano le persone a diventare più forti, proprio come una squadra di gladiatori! Comunque al campeggio possiamo anche giocare a tennis, a calcio, a golf... E possiamo esplorare la natura.

**4**

Ma per favore! Non mi va di essere un gladiatore. Conosci il film? Portano la gonna.

**5**



Non ti preoccupare, Stephen. Al campeggio ti danno una tuta sportiva. Puoi fare finta che fai parte della squadra di calcio nazionale!

6

Preferisco rimanere a casa e giocare ai videogiochi. È meno duro, sai. C'è un gioco dove devi scalare la montagna e fare surf...



7



Dai Stephen, al campeggio dei gladiatori puoi fare davvero queste cose.

Va bene, se dici che posso giocare a calcio... e se non devo portare la gonna!

8

## ABC Glossario

### nomi

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>l'arrampicata</b>                              | rock climbing                               |
| <b>il campeggio</b>                               | the camp                                    |
| <b>i gladiatori</b>                               | the gladiators                              |
| <b>l'isola</b>                                    | the island                                  |
| <b>il mare</b>                                    | the sea                                     |
| <b>la montagna</b>                                | the mountain                                |
| <b>la natura</b>                                  | the nature                                  |
| <b>il parapendio</b>                              | paragliding                                 |
| <b>il Parco Nazionale dell'Arcipelago Toscano</b> | the National Park of the Tuscan Archipelago |
| <b>le persone</b>                                 | the people                                  |
| <b>gli sport estremi</b>                          | the extreme sports                          |
| <b>la squadra</b>                                 | the team                                    |
| <b>il surf</b>                                    | surfing                                     |
| <b>la tuta sportiva</b>                           | the tracksuit                               |
| <b>il windsurf</b>                                | windsurfing                                 |

### aggettivi

|                  |          |
|------------------|----------|
| <b>duro/a</b>    | hard     |
| <b>lontano/a</b> | far away |
| <b>nazionale</b> | national |
| <b>popolare</b>  | popular  |



## avverbi

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>comunque</b>         | in any case, anyway |
| <b>davvero</b>          | really, indeed      |
| <b>meno</b>             | less                |
| <b>moltissimo/a/i/e</b> | very much           |
| <b>soltanto (se)</b>    | only (if)           |

## verbi

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>non capisco</b> | I don't understand (from <b>capire</b> —to understand)               |
| <b>conosci</b>     | you know (from <b>conoscere</b> —to know [someone or something])     |
| <b>non conosco</b> | I don't know (from <b>conoscere</b> —to know [someone or something]) |
| <b>ti danno</b>    | they give you (from <b>dare</b> —to give)                            |
| <b>diventare</b>   | to become  |
| <b>esplorare</b>   | to explore   |
| <b>fare finta</b>  | to pretend   |
| <b>farmi male</b>  | to hurt myself (from <b>farsi male</b> —to hurt oneself)             |
| <b>nuotare</b>     | to swim  |
| <b>rimanere</b>    | to remain  |
| <b>sai</b>         | you know (from <b>sapere</b> —to know [a fact])                      |
| <b>scalare</b>     | to climb   |

## altre espressioni e parole

|                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>a che cosa servono?</b> | what purpose do they serve? |
| <b>bel divertimento!</b>   | what fun!                   |
| <b>dai</b>                 | come on                     |
| <b>dove si trova...</b>    | where is (can you find) ... |
| <b>fa parte di...</b>      | is part of ...              |
| <b>favoloso!</b>           | fabulous!                   |
| <b>non mi va</b>           | I don't feel like (it)      |
| <b>non ti preoccupare</b>  | don't (you) worry           |
| <b>sei pazzo/a!</b>        | you're crazy!               |

## Attività 4.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- |          |  |          |          |
|----------|--|----------|----------|
| <b>1</b> | Nathan thinks that extreme sports are fabulous.                | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Il campeggio dei gladiatori</b> is on the island of Sicily. | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>3</b> | The camp is hours away.  | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>4</b> | The students can travel to the camp by train.                  | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>5</b> | Paolo says the weather on the island is always nice.           | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>6</b> | Nathan thinks that extreme sports help people become popular.  | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>7</b> | The students can explore nature at the camp.                   | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>8</b> | Stephen wants to take his video games to camp.                 | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |



## Sapere and conoscere

Some new verbs were introduced in the cartoon story. Two of them both mean 'to know' in English: **sapere** and **conoscere**.

**Sapere** means 'to know a fact' or how to do something.

**Esempi** **Io so che il gatto è nero.** I know that the cat is black.  
**Io so la risposta.** I know the answer.

**Loro sanno suonare la tromba.**  
They know how to play the trumpet.

**Conoscere** means 'to be familiar with' or to 'know someone or something'.

**Esempi** **Io conosco tuo fratello.** I know your brother.  
**Io conosco bene il film.** I know the film well.

**Lui conosce il padre di Valerio.**  
He knows Valerio's father.

## Sapere

|          | sapere   | to know (a fact)   |
|----------|--|--|
| singular | (io) so<br>(tu) sai<br>(lui/lei) sa            | I know (a fact)<br>you know (a fact)<br>he/she/it knows (a fact) |
| plural   | (noi) sappiamo<br>(voi) sapete<br>(loro) sanno | we know (a fact)<br>you know (a fact)<br>they know (a fact)      |

## Conoscere

|          | conoscere   | to know (someone or something)   |
|----------|---|--|
| singular | (io) conosco<br>(tu) conosci<br>(lui/lei) conosce       | I know (someone or something)<br>you know (someone or something)<br>he/she/it knows (someone or something) |
| plural   | (noi) conosciamo<br>(voi) conoscete<br>(loro) conoscono | we know (someone or something)<br>you know (someone or something)<br>they know (someone or something)      |

You would also use the verb **conoscere** to say that you are familiar with a place.

**Esempi** **Conosco Roma.** I know (am familiar with) Rome.  
**Conosci la casa di Franca.**  
You know (are familiar with) Franca's house.

Ma per favore! Non mi va di essere un gladiatore. Conosci il film? Portano la gonna.





## Tocca a te!

With a partner, take turns to express that you know the below list of things/people using the verbs **sapere** and **conoscere**. You will need to conjugate the verbs in the **io** form.

**Esempi** **Conosco il film *Twilight*.** (il film *Twilight*)

**So la formula di matematica.** (la formula di matematica)

- 1 la madre di Sonia
- 2 la musica di Madonna
- 3 il giorno del mio onomastico
- 4 il tempo per venerdì
- 5 l'insegnante d'italiano
- 6 l'alfabeto italiano
- 7 i numeri romani
- 8 l'amico di mia sorella

## Handy hint

The original fifteen member states of the European Union (in alphabetical order in Italian) were:

- l'**Austria** (Austria)
- il **Belgio** (Belgium)
- la **Danimarca** (Denmark)
- la **Finlandia** (Finland)
- la **Francia** (France)
- la **Germania** (Germany)
- la **Grecia** (Greece)
- l'**Irlanda** (Ireland)
- l'**Italia** (Italy)
- il **Lussemburgo** (Luxembourg)
- i **Paesi Bassi** (Netherlands)
- il **Portogallo** (Portugal)
- il **Regno Unito** (United Kingdom)
- la **Spagna** (Spain)
- la **Svezia** (Sweden)



## Investigazione Culturale



### L'ambiente in Europa

Like many people in Australia and around the world, Italians are becoming increasingly aware of environmental issues on a local and global scale.

Unlike Australia, however, Italy is part of the European Union. This means that Italy works towards a joint effort in lowering carbon emissions (the amount of carbon dioxide released into the air from pollutants) with other EU-15 member states. The EU-15 has a target to reduce carbon emissions by 8 per cent by 2012. Many EU-15 countries plan to cut down on carbon emissions by introducing 'carbon sinks'—like planting forests that absorb CO<sub>2</sub>—to achieve the target.



## Cosa pensi ?

Do you think it would be easier or more difficult to achieve lower carbon emissions as part of a large group of countries? Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of being part of this alliance and give reasons for your opinions.

## Ragazzi, chi aiuta l'ambiente?

I ragazzi che hanno dai 14 ai 17 anni devono pensare al riscaldamento globale perché è un problema che ha effetti sulla loro vita futura. Molti ragazzi conoscono i problemi dell'ambiente, ma non fanno molto per aiutare l'ambiente.



Secondo una ricerca del 2008, di 600 ragazzi italiani tra i 14 e i 17 anni, solo il 37 per cento dei giovani si preoccupa dell'effetto serra e solo il 28 per cento si preoccupa dell'esaurimento delle fonti energetiche come il carbone,

il petrolio e la benzina naturale.

Come si può aiutare la terra? Tutti devono riciclare e consumare meno elettricità. Purtroppo, solo la metà dei ragazzi ricicla e meno della metà preferisce usare la bicicletta al motorino.

Solo il 19 per cento fa attenzione ai consumi elettrici. Oggi molti ragazzi usano il cellulare, il lettore MP3, i videogiochi e il computer, e ogni persona contribuisce all'impronta ecologica e al riscaldamento globale.

Ovviamente tutti insieme dobbiamo accettare le nostre responsabilità e aiutare la terra.

### Handy hint

Even though the language in the article is a little bit difficult, remember to use the three rules to try to figure out what something means in Italian: look for the words you already know, look for cognates (words that look and sound like English words) and look for visual clues (if there are any). If you need to, use the wordlist at the back of the book to look up unfamiliar words.

### Attività 4.2

How much did you understand in the article about young people and the environment? Answer these questions, in English, in your exercise book.

- 1 According to the article, what do 14- to 17-year-olds need to do with reference to global warming?
- 2 What do 37 per cent of Italian teenagers worry about?
- 3 What percentage of Italian teenagers claim to recycle?
- 4 What do only 19 per cent of Italian teenagers do to help the environment?
- 5 List some of the devices teenagers use that contribute to their carbon footprint.

### Attività 4.3

How do the article findings compare with your class' attitudes to the environment? With your teacher's help, conduct a survey of your classmates in Italian. Use the modal verbs **dovere**, **potere** and **volere** to answer:

- 1 Cosa dobbiamo fare per aiutare l'ambiente?
- 2 Cosa possiamo fare per aiutare l'ambiente?
- 3 Cosa vuoi fare per aiutare l'ambiente?



Dobbiamo pensare all'effetto del riscaldamento globale.



## L'ecoturismo

Italy is home to many spectacular geographical features, including idyllic countryside, majestic mountains and beautiful beaches.

Just like in Australia, the Italian government has taken steps to preserve and protect natural landscapes that are considered 'national treasures' by declaring them **parchi nazionali** (national parks). Many **turisti** (tourists) visit these areas every year and, as a consequence, **la conservazione della natura** (nature conservation) is very important to Italy's tourist industry and economy.

You read in the cartoon story that **Isola d'Elba** is part of **il Parco Nazionale dell'Arcipelago Toscano**. The island is located just off the coast of **Toscana**, an hour's ferry ride from the Italian coast, and is a very popular **destinazione turistica** (tourist destination) for people of all ages. **L'Isola d'Elba** offers visitors a variety of activities (for active and relaxed travellers) while also allowing people to explore **l'isola** and experience its natural beauty.

Other valued national parks that are favoured with tourists are **il Parco Nazionale d'Abruzzo**, **il Parco Nazionale del Vesuvio** in **Campania**, **l'Alta Murgia** in **Puglia** and **le Dolomiti** in **Veneto**.

**L'ecoturismo** (ecotourism) is a form of travel where people visit an area where the natural flora (plants) and fauna (animals) are the major attractions. **I turisti** are asked to try not to disrupt the natural environments of these areas so that they can be maintained for future visitors. The operators of ecotourism attractions usually encourage visitors to appreciate **l'ambiente** and they promote recycling, using energy efficiently and water conservation.

Italy is at the forefront of **l'ecoturismo** because its tourist trade is one of the biggest in the world. The Italians know that if they don't look after their treasured natural environments, they might not be around for future generations to admire.



il Parco Nazionale d'Abruzzo

### Cosa pensi ?

Do you know of anything that your local community is doing to preserve and protect its natural environments for the future? Are you doing anything yourself, or would you like to?



il Parco Nazionale del Vesuvio

## Attività 4.4



Conduct some research on the Internet to find out more about Italy's national parks. Based on your research, consider which you would most like to visit and why, and what time of the year would be best to visit this national park. Write your opinions and findings, in English, in your exercise book.



### Investigazione Linguistica

## Dare

**Dare** (to give) is an irregular verb because it doesn't follow the normal conjugation pattern of **-are** verbs.

|          | dare                                      | to give                               |
|----------|---|---------------------------------------|
| singular | (io) do<br>(tu) dai<br>(lui/lei) dà       | I give<br>you give<br>he/she/it gives |
| plural   | (noi) diamo<br>(voi) date<br>(loro) danno | we give<br>you give<br>they give      |

To say, 'I give (something) to someone', you would use 'Io do + item a'.

**Esempi Io do lo zaino a mia sorella.**

I give the backpack to my sister.

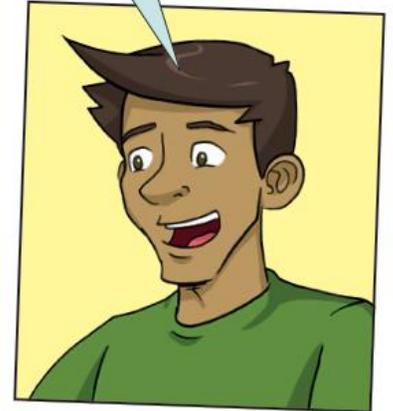
**Voi date il libro a vostro padre.**

You (plural) give the book to your father.

**Xavier dà la palla a Cristiano.**

Xavier gives the ball to Cristiano.

Al campeggio ti danno una tuta sportiva...



## Attività 4.5

Complete these sentences with the correct form of **dare**. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- 1 Io \_\_\_\_\_ la tromba al mio amico.
- 2 Io e Helena \_\_\_\_\_ la sciarpa a mia madre.
- 3 Nunzio \_\_\_\_\_ i compiti alla professoressa.
- 4 Michele e Davide \_\_\_\_\_ €40,00 alla commessa.
- 5 Tu \_\_\_\_\_ il cellulare a tuo fratello.
- 6 Voi \_\_\_\_\_ il cane a Melissa.



### Più o meno? (The comparative)

When you wish to compare one thing with another you use a grammatical structure known as the 'comparative'. Here are the forms you can use:

**più... di/che...** more ... than ...

**meno... di/che...** less ... than ...

**Più** and **meno** can be used with **di** or **che**. **Di** is used when comparing two different things (nouns), while **che** is used when the comparison is between two qualities (adjectives) of the same thing, or between two actions (verbs).

**Esempi** Il motocross è **più veloce del** canottaggio.

Motocross is faster than canoeing.

Il canottaggio è **più avventuroso che** pericoloso.

Canoeing is more adventurous than dangerous.

Penso **che studiare è più interessante che** guardare la TV.

I think that studying is more interesting than watching TV.



### Attività 4.6

Show you understand how comparisons work in Italian by translating these sentences into English, in your exercise book.

- 1 Il motocross è meno divertente del windsurf.
- 2 Il calcio è più difficile che pericoloso.
- 3 L'arrampicata è più difficile del parapendio.
- 4 Giocare ai videogiochi è meno importante che aiutare l'ambiente.
- 5 L'Italia è molto più piccola dell'Australia.
- 6 Elena pensa che cantare è meno noioso che suonare il basso.



Remember, you learnt in Chapter 2 that prepositions (like **di**) are function words used in front of nouns to show the relationship to another word in the sentence.

## Articulated prepositions

You will notice in a lot of phrases that use a combination of **più di** or **meno di** that the **di** appears as another word. These words are called 'articulated prepositions' (a preposition with a definite article attached). Some frequently used articulated prepositions are shown in the table that follows.

| Preposition            | Definite article        |                           |                           |                           |                        |                           |                            |
|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
|                        | il                      | la                        | l'                        | lo                        | i                      | le                        | gli                        |
| <b>a</b><br>(at/to)    | a + il<br>= <b>al</b>   | a + la<br>= <b>alla</b>   | a + l'<br>= <b>all'</b>   | a + lo<br>= <b>allo</b>   | a + i<br>= <b>ai</b>   | a + le<br>= <b>alle</b>   | a + gli<br>= <b>agli</b>   |
| <b>da</b><br>(from/by) | da + il<br>= <b>dal</b> | da + la<br>= <b>dalla</b> | da + l'<br>= <b>dall'</b> | da + lo<br>= <b>dallo</b> | da + i<br>= <b>dai</b> | da + le<br>= <b>dalle</b> | da + gli<br>= <b>dagli</b> |
| <b>di</b><br>(of)      | di + il<br>= <b>del</b> | di + la<br>= <b>della</b> | di + l'<br>= <b>dell'</b> | di + lo<br>= <b>dello</b> | di + i<br>= <b>dei</b> | di + le<br>= <b>delle</b> | di + gli<br>= <b>degli</b> |

**Esempi** La vela è più divertente **della** pesca.

Sailing is more fun than fishing.

L'educazione fisica è meno difficile **delle** scienze.

Physical education is less difficult than science.

Niente è più divertente del paracadutismooooooooooooooooooooo!

## Attività 4.7



Listen carefully to the audio. Identify and make a note in your exercise book of the articulated preposition used in each sentence.

**Esempio** Adele deve incontrare Michele **alle** due e venti.

Articulated preposition = **alle**



## Handy hint

When you use *possessive adjectives* with prepositions, what would normally be the definite article will become an articulated preposition. For example, **la mia amica** (my friend) would become **alla mia amica** (to my friend). How would you say 'from my friend' or 'of my friend/friend's'?



# Gli sport estremi al campeggio dei gladiatori

## Cosa pensi?

Do you think it is responsible for people to practise extreme sports? Which extreme sport, if any, would you like to try and why?

Apart from the advantage of exploring nature on l'Isola d'Elba, the Australian students are interested in **il campeggio dei gladiatori** because of the sports offered there, including extreme sports. Read the brochure below to find out which extreme sports feature at the camp.

## Fai uno sport estremo al campeggio dei gladiatori!

**l'alpinismo**

il bungee jumping

il paracadutismo

**il kayak**

il mountain biking

il parapendio

il surf

il windsurf

**l'arrampicata**

**kayaking**



mountain biking

surfing windsurfing

mountain climbing

paragliding

bungee jumping

parachuting

**rock climbing**



## Attività 4.8

Italy has many successful sportspeople. Read the short biography about Federica Pellegrini and answer the questions that follow, in English, in your exercise book.



**FEDERICA PELLEGRINI** è nata a Mirano, vicino Venezia, il cinque agosto 1988. Il suo segno zodiacale è il Leone. Pellegrini è una nuotatrice italiana e ha una medaglia d'oro per il nuoto ai giochi olimpici di Pechino nel 2008. Dopo Pechino, continua a vincere. Il suo soprannome è 'la Leonessa' e uno dei suoi film preferiti è *Il Re Leone*.

- 1 When was Federica Pellegrini born?
- 2 What is her zodiac sign?
- 3 Which sport is she famous for?
- 4 What colour medal did she win at the 2008 Olympics?
- 5 What is her nickname?

### ABC Glossario

#### nomi

|                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>i giochi olimpici</b>  | the Olympics    |
| <b>la medaglia d'oro</b>  | the gold medal  |
| <b>il segno zodiacale</b> | the zodiac sign |
| <b>il soprannome</b>      | the nickname    |

#### verbo

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| <b>è nata</b> | she was born (from <b>nascere</b> —to be born) |
|---------------|--|

#### altre espressioni e parole

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>continua a vincere</b> | she continues to win     |
| <b>Leone</b>              | Leo (zodiac sign)        |
| <b>'la Leonessa'</b>      | 'The Lioness' (nickname) |
| <b>Pechino</b>            | Beijing                  |



il cavallino rampante  
(the prancing horse)

### Cosa pensi ?

What do you think of car racing in light of the world's current environmental issues? Do you think it is enough for car manufacturers like Ferrari to develop new technologies to reduce carbon emissions?

## La Ferrari

The Ferrari motor car company was founded in 1928 by Enzo Ferrari, an Italian racing car driver. The company started out as a racing car manufacturer, but later began producing street-legal sports cars in 1947, when the company set up its headquarters in Maranello, near Modena, in northern Italy. Ferrari cars are hand-built, which means that only a small number are produced each year—this makes them extra special and very expensive!

The story of the famous emblem of Ferrari—a prancing horse—dates back to an Italian First World War pilot named Francesco Baracca who died during the war. The war hero was said to have had a black prancing horse painted on the plane he was tragically shot down in. In 1923, at the completion of a race in Ravenna, Enzo met the pilot's family, who suggested to Enzo that he use the emblem to bring him good luck. So that's what he did! However, he added the yellow background to signify the **colore** of Modena.

**L'automobilismo** (motor racing) is a very popular sport in Italy. Italians follow the sport passionately, and support their **squadra** Ferrari in **Formula Uno** (Formula One) races around the world. Some of the world's most successful and famous racing car drivers have been part of the Ferrari team, including Michael Schumacher and Felipe Massa.

Today people from all corners of the globe admire Ferrari cars for their beauty and power. Soon Ferrari may also be regarded as being more environmentally friendly, as it and other sports car manufacturers develop hybrid technologies (combining two or more sources of power) to reduce fuel consumption and carbon emissions.



Una macchina di Formula Uno Ferrari



## Preferire

You will have already come across the verb **preferire** (to prefer) in your earlier studies when talking about what type of things you prefer (or like).

|          | <b>preferire</b>   | <b>to prefer</b>                            |
|----------|--|---|
| singular | (io) preferisco<br>(tu) preferisci<br>(lui/lei) preferisce | I prefer<br>you prefer<br>he/she/it prefers |
| plural   | (noi) preferiamo<br>(voi) preferite<br>(loro) preferiscono | we prefer<br>you prefer<br>they prefer      |

When you use **preferire** before another verb, to say that you prefer doing something, the other verb will always be in the infinitive.

**Esempi** Tu preferisci **nuotare**.

You prefer to swim.

**Noi preferiamo fare ciclismo.**

We prefer to cycle.

**I ragazzi preferiscono giocare a football australiano.**

The boys prefer to play Australian Rules football.



Preferisco rimanere a casa...



## Tocca a te!

With a partner, take turns asking and responding to the following questions in Italian.

**Esempio** **A:** Preferisci giocare a calcio o fare windsurf?

**B:** Preferisco giocare a calcio.

- 1 Preferisci giocare a golf o a cricket?
- 2 Preferisci fare surf o giocare a tennis?
- 3 Preferisci giocare a pallavolo o fare ciclismo?
- 4 Preferisci giocare a rugby o fare parapendio?
- 5 Preferisci fare atletica o kayak?
- 6 Preferisci giocare a netball o a pallacanestro?



## The hands have it!

Hand gestures and signals are a language in themselves. For example, in sports, **gli arbitri** (the umpires), **i giocatori** (the players), and **gli allenatori** (the coaches) all have their own non-verbal way of talking to each other, whether it's signalling a free kick in **football australiano**, or doing a type of serve in **pallavolo**.

Sometimes Italians use hand gestures to emphasise an **espressione** and give it the strength that the word or phrase itself doesn't have. They don't always accompany the gestures with words; they may just indicate their meaning through body language.

It's important to be aware that certain hand gestures can have completely different interpretations in other cultures!

Here are some Italian gestures and their intended meanings in English.

### Cosa pensi ?

What are some hand gestures specific to your culture? Remember, culture doesn't have to be nationality; it can be determined by age, religion or language, just to name a few things.



**Me ne frego!**  
(I couldn't care less!)



**Perfetto!**  
(Perfect!)



**Che barba!**  
(How boring!)



**È un po' tocco/pazzo.**  
(He/she is a bit crazy.)



### Tocca a te!

Individually, practise performing the gestures above. Say what they mean in Italian as you do this. Then, with a partner, silently perform each gesture. Your partner has to identify what you are trying to say. Swap roles so that you both have a chance to present and guess meanings. How good are your performance skills and how many gestures can you both get right?

# Ripasso

1 Complete these sentences with the appropriate conjugation of the verb written in brackets. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a Noi \_\_\_\_\_ bene la città di Genova. (*conoscere*)
- b Leonie e Justin \_\_\_\_\_ fare windsurf? (*sapere*)
- c Sara \_\_\_\_\_ che oggi fa freddo. (*sapere*)
- d Io \_\_\_\_\_ tuo cugino. (*conoscere*)
- e Loro \_\_\_\_\_ fare ciclismo. (*preferire*)
- f Voi \_\_\_\_\_ il cellulare al professore. (*dare*)

2 Translate these comparative sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a Playing the drums is more fun than difficult.
- b Rugby is more interesting than cricket.
- c Sending a SMS is easier than writing an email.
- d My dog is more adventurous than intelligent.
- e The bathroom is smaller than the garage.
- f Studying history is less boring than playing sport.

3 Read the following paragraphs of people talking about the games they play. From the descriptions, identify what sport they participate in. (Use a dictionary or the wordlist at the back of the book to look up any unfamiliar words.)

a  **Luca:** Preferisco giocare con una squadra. Le mie partite sono in due parti e durano circa novanta minuti. L'arbitro è molto severo. La mia squadra ha una divisa. Usiamo una palla rotonda e non possiamo usare le mani. Gioco a \_\_\_\_\_.

b  **Amelia:** Non mi piacciono gli sport estremi. Sono troppo pericolosi! Preferisco giocare da sola. Uso una racchetta e una piccola palla gialla. Non porto una divisa. Gioco a \_\_\_\_\_.

c  **Luisa:** Porto una divisa e gioco in una squadra. Usiamo una palla e l'arbitro deve essere molto intelligente. Devo essere molto veloce. Il gioco è come la pallacanestro, ma non è la pallacanestro. Sono attaccante. Gioco a \_\_\_\_\_.

4 Complete the preposition + definite article equations with the correct articulated prepositions. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| a a + il =  | f a + gli = |
| b di + la = | g di + l' = |
| c a + lo =  | h da + i =  |
| d da + il = | i di + lo = |
| e da + le = | j a + l' =  |

5 How would you say these expressions in Italian? Say them aloud and include the appropriate hand gestures.

- a Perfect!
- b I couldn't care less!
- c He's a bit crazy.
- d How boring!

# Riassunto

## Now you can:

### use the verbs sapere, conoscere, dare and preferire

|          | sapere         | to know (a fact)         |
|----------|----------------|--------------------------|
| singular | (io) so        | I know (a fact)          |
|          | (tu) sai       | you know (a fact)        |
|          | (lui/lei) sa   | he/she/it knows (a fact) |
| plural   | (noi) sappiamo | we know (a fact)         |
|          | (voi) sapete   | you know (a fact)        |
|          | (loro) sanno   | they know (a fact)       |

|          | dare         | to give         |
|----------|--------------|-----------------|
| singular | (io) do      | I give          |
|          | (tu) dai     | you give        |
|          | (lui/lei) dà | he/she/it gives |
| plural   | (noi) diamo  | we give         |
|          | (voi) date   | you give        |
|          | (loro) danno | they give       |

|          | conoscere         | to know (someone or something)         |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| singular | (io) conosco      | I know (someone or something)          |
|          | (tu) conosci      | you know (someone or something)        |
|          | (lui/lei) conosce | he/she/it knows (someone or something) |
| plural   | (noi) conosciamo  | we know (someone or something)         |
|          | (voi) conoscete   | you know (someone or something)        |
|          | (loro) conoscono  | they know (someone or something)       |

|          | preferire            | to prefer         |
|----------|----------------------|-------------------|
| singular | (io) preferisco      | I prefer          |
|          | (tu) preferisci      | you prefer        |
|          | (lui/lei) preferisce | he/she/it prefers |
| plural   | (noi) preferiamo     | we prefer         |
|          | (voi) preferite      | you prefer        |
|          | (loro) preferiscono  | they prefer       |

### compare different things, qualities and actions using the comparative form

Il motocross è **più veloce** del canottaggio.

Motocross is faster than canoeing.

Il canottaggio è **più avventuroso** che pericoloso.

Canoeing is more adventurous than dangerous.

Penso che studiare è **più interessante** che guardare la TV.

I think that studying is more interesting than watching TV.

### use articulated prepositions

| Preposition            | Definite article        |                           |                           |                           |                        |                           |                            |
|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
|                        | il                      | la                        | l'                        | lo                        | i                      | le                        | gli                        |
| <b>a</b><br>(at/to)    | a + il<br>= <b>al</b>   | a + la<br>= <b>alla</b>   | a + l'<br>= <b>all'</b>   | a + lo<br>= <b>allo</b>   | a + i<br>= <b>ai</b>   | a + le<br>= <b>alle</b>   | a + gli<br>= <b>agli</b>   |
| <b>da</b><br>(from/by) | da + il<br>= <b>dal</b> | da + la<br>= <b>dalla</b> | da + l'<br>= <b>dall'</b> | da + lo<br>= <b>dallo</b> | da + i<br>= <b>dai</b> | da + le<br>= <b>dalle</b> | da + gli<br>= <b>dagli</b> |
| <b>di</b><br>(of)      | di + il<br>= <b>del</b> | di + la<br>= <b>della</b> | di + l'<br>= <b>dell'</b> | di + lo<br>= <b>dello</b> | di + i<br>= <b>dei</b> | di + le<br>= <b>delle</b> | di + gli<br>= <b>degli</b> |

### identify and discuss extreme sports

**l'alpinismo** mountain climbing  
**l'arrampicata** rock climbing  
**il bungee jumping** bungee jumping  
**il kayak** kayaking  
**il mountain biking** mountain biking

**il paracadutismo** parachuting  
**il parapendio** paragliding  
**il surf** surfing  
**il windsurf** windsurfing

# In giro per Venezia

## You will learn how to:

- buy a Venetian water-bus ticket
- identify some significant aspects, events and people associated with **Venezia**
- understand, ask for and give directions
- identify key places on a map
- use the singular familiar (**tu**), singular formal (**Lei**) and plural (**voi**) of **l'imperativo negativo**
- order and buy some food
- express likes and dislikes for food.



# La gita comincia



10

The Australian students and Nina have just arrived in **Venezia** for a visit to the 'City of Canals'. They are meeting up with Akrim, Stephen's host-brother, at a **vaporetto** (water-bus) landing to make their way to their accommodation.

Ragazzi, io vado a domandare come si arriva alla pensione. Ci incontriamo fra dieci minuti nella sala d'arrivo.

Va bene. Mando un SMS a Akrim e dico che siamo alla stazione.

Quindi, la pensione è in Calle del Vin... Secondo questa cartina non è molto lontano da Piazza San Marco.

**1**

**2**

Per cortesia, come si arriva a Calle del Vin? È molto lontano?

Non è molto lontano, ma è meglio prendere il vaporetto. L'imbarco è di fronte all'ingresso della stazione. Prenda il vaporetto numero due e scenda alla fermata San Zaccaria. La biglietteria per il vaporetto è all'ingresso della stazione.

Cinque biglietti di corsa semplice per San Zaccaria, per favore.

Certo, signorina. Il vaporetto parte fra quindici minuti.

**3**

**4**

Ecco! Allora... vediamo un po'. Ah sì, Calle del Vin è di là. Avanti ragazzi!

Dobbiamo trovare Akrim... è già qui. Ecco un SMS: dice che è vicino allo sbarco.

Stephen, penso che Akrim è là... È lui accanto a quella bancarella?

Sì, è lui che saluta con le mani in aria.

Ciao ragazzi! Finalmente siete arrivati. Benvenuti a Venezia!

**5**

**6**

Later that day, Nathan and Jessica are out exploring **Venezia** and have become a little lost. They ask a couple of locals for directions.

Scusate ragazze, come arriviamo a Piazza San Marco?

Allora, continuate sempre dritto, poi girate a sinistra e poi subito a destra, e di nuovo a sinistra e poi seguite il canale fino a...

7

Ma no... scherza. Continuate sempre dritto e in fondo girate a sinistra. Questa è la Calle dei Forni. Seguite la calle fino in fondo e arrivate a Piazza San Marco.

Mille grazie!

8

## ABC Glossario

### nomi

la bancarella

the market stall

la biglietteria

the ticket office

i biglietti di corsa semplice

the standard one-way tickets

la calle

the calle (narrow Venetian street)

il canale

the canal

la cartina

the map

l'imbarco

the boarding (point)

l'ingresso

the entrance

la pensione

the guest house

la sala d'arrivo

the arrivals hall/room

lo sbarco

the landing

la signorina

miss, Miss (title)

la stazione

the station

il vaporetto

the water-bus

### avverbi

a destra

to the right

a sinistra

to the left

di nuovo

again

già

already

meglio

better

### verbi

**continuate** you (plural) continue (from **continuare**—to continue)

**domandare** to ask

## Biglietti

|                              |        |
|------------------------------|--------|
| Biglietto di corsa semplice  | €6,50  |
| Biglietto dodici ore         | €16,00 |
| Biglietto ventiquattro ore   | €18,00 |
| Biglietto trentasei ore      | €26,00 |
| Biglietto due giorni         | €28,00 |
| Biglietto tre giorni         | €33,00 |
| Biglietto tre giorni giovani | €18,00 |
| Biglietto sette giorni       | €50,00 |



## Cosa pensi?

Look at **il vaporetto** ticket prices. How do they compare with prices for the main form of public transport where you live? Do you think there is a reason why **vaporetto** ticket prices might be so expensive? Do you think the same prices would apply to other forms of public transport in Italy? You might like to use the Internet to find out more about public transport prices in your area, and to convert the prices from Australian dollars into euro.

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>girare</b>  | you (plural) turn (from <b>girare</b> —to turn)   |
| <b>parte</b>   | he/she/it leaves (from <b>partire</b> —to leave)  |
| <b>penso</b>   | I think (from <b>pensare</b> —to think)   |
| <b>saluta</b>  | he/she/it says hello (from <b>salutare</b> —to say hello)                               |
| <b>scenda</b>  | he/she/it gets off (imperative form)<br>(from <b>scendere</b> —to get off/to disembark) |
| <b>scherza</b> | he/she/it is joking (from <b>scherzare</b> —to joke)                                    |
| <b>seguite</b> | you (plural) follow (from <b>seguire</b> —to follow)                                    |
| <b>trovare</b> | to find   |

## preposizioni

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>accanto (a)</b>   | beside, near   |
| <b>di fronte (a)</b> | opposite, facing   |
| <b>fra</b>           | in (when referring to time) or between<br>(when referring to location) |
| <b>in fondo</b>      | at/to the end  |

## altre espressioni e parole

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <b>avanti!</b>            | come on!                               |
| <b>come si arriva...?</b> | how do you get to ...?                 |
| <b>è di là</b>            | is over there                          |
| <b>finalmente!</b>        | finally!                               |
| <b>fino</b>               | until                                  |
| <b>le mani in aria</b>    | hands in the air                       |
| <b>mille grazie!</b>      | thank you very much!                   |
| <b>per cortesia</b>       | excuse me (literally: 'with courtesy') |
| <b>sempre dritto</b>      | straight ahead                         |

## Attività 5.1

Look at the cartoon story on pages 74–5 again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- When the group arrives at the station in **Venezia**, Nina tells the students to meet her in the arrivals hall. **V F**
- La pensione** is located in **Piazza San Marco**. **V F**
- The group will catch a water-bus to get to their accommodation. **V F**
- The woman at the information office tells Nina to catch **vaporetto** number one. **V F**
- Akrim is waiting for the group near the water-bus landing. **V F**





## Introducing Venezia

Look at a map of Italy (page x). Can you find Venice? **Venezia**, or Venice as we call it in English, is a unique place. It is built on over 118 small islands, is linked by more than 400 bridges and is surrounded by a lagoon.

In ancient Roman times, **Venezia** was used by the citizens of nearby Roman mainland colonies for fishing and hunting. A few centuries on, around the fourth century CE, these people stabilised the marshy lagoon and islands, and learnt to navigate the channels and control the rivers, making **Venezia** a place where people could actually live.

**Venezia** started to grow and prosper and by the eighth century CE, it was an independent city state and a flourishing trade centre.

In the ninth century CE, the body of St Mark the Evangelist was supposedly abducted by Venetians from its burial place in Alexandria, Egypt and taken to **Venezia**. This event initiated the building of the foundations of **la Basilica di San Marco** (St Mark's Basilica) and **il Palazzo Ducale** (the Doge's Palace)—both have become major tourist attractions for visitors to **Venezia**. Around this time, the symbol of St Mark, the winged lion, became associated with **Venezia**. It still remains on the city's flag and as a feature of buildings around the city.

**Venezia** kept growing as a major trading power. The city excelled in ship building and in the thirteenth century expanded its control of major trading and shipping routes. In 1260 Venetian trader and explorer Marco Polo left his home city with his father and uncle on what was to become a historic expedition to Asia.

In the fifteenth century, **Venezia's** wealth and power were such that the other European powers were angered and felt threatened by the city's dominance. This resulted in a period of war and the start of **Venezia's** decline.

At the end of the eighteenth century, Napoleon invaded **Venezia**, the city was declared bankrupt and the last **Doge** (head of state) was deposed.

In more recent times, **Venezia** has become an essential stop for tourism in Europe and is visited by more than 20 million tourists a year. However, post-war industrial growth has resulted in environmental troubles for **la laguna** (the lagoon)—pollution and tidal problems have the authorities looking for solutions and initiatives to protect the city.

**Venezia** is slowly sinking and is twenty-three centimetres lower in the water than it was one hundred years ago. Occurrences of **acqua alta** (high waters) have increased dramatically and now happen about 130 days a year. Experts say that within the next century, the city will sink completely unless a solution can be found.



il leone di San Marco



il Palazzo Ducale



Dove vanno i turisti se Venezia non c'è più?

## Attività 5.2



Find out more about **Venezia** and the important parts of the city's history by researching the following topics:

- **Venezia's** geography
- **Venezia's** early inhabitants
- **la Basilica di San Marco**
- **il Palazzo Ducale** and **Venezia's Dogi**
- Marco Polo.

Work in groups of five with each member choosing one topic to research and report back to the group.



La Basilica di San Marco con l'acqua alta

### Cosa pensi ?

- 1 What do you think about **Venezia's** environmental problems? In what ways could tourism be impacting on the city's environmental issues (like pollution and **acqua alta**)?
- 2 What do you think could be done to resolve **Venezia's** current flooding problems and keep it from sinking? What role does science play in the situation?



### Investigazione Linguistica

#### Asking for directions

You may recall that **dove** means 'where'. When used with a form of **essere** it can mean 'where is ...?'.  
**Esempi** **Dov'è la pensione?** Where is the guest house?  
**Dove sono gli studenti?** Where are the students?

**Dove** can also be used with other verbs.

**Esempi** **Dove vai?** (from **andare**) Where are you going?

**Dove prendiamo il vaporetto?** (from **prendere**)  
Where do we catch the water-bus?

A simple response in Italian to the question '**Dov'è** + name of a place?' is to give the street or square it is located in.

**Esempio** **Dov'è la pensione Verdi?** Where is the Verdi guest house?

**È in Via Verdi.** It's in Via Verdi.

# Posti in città

## Places around town

Look at the places shown on the map. These are places you may need to look for when travelling around Italy's cities.



1 l'albergo/l'hotel



2 la pizzeria



3 la stazione



4 la fermata



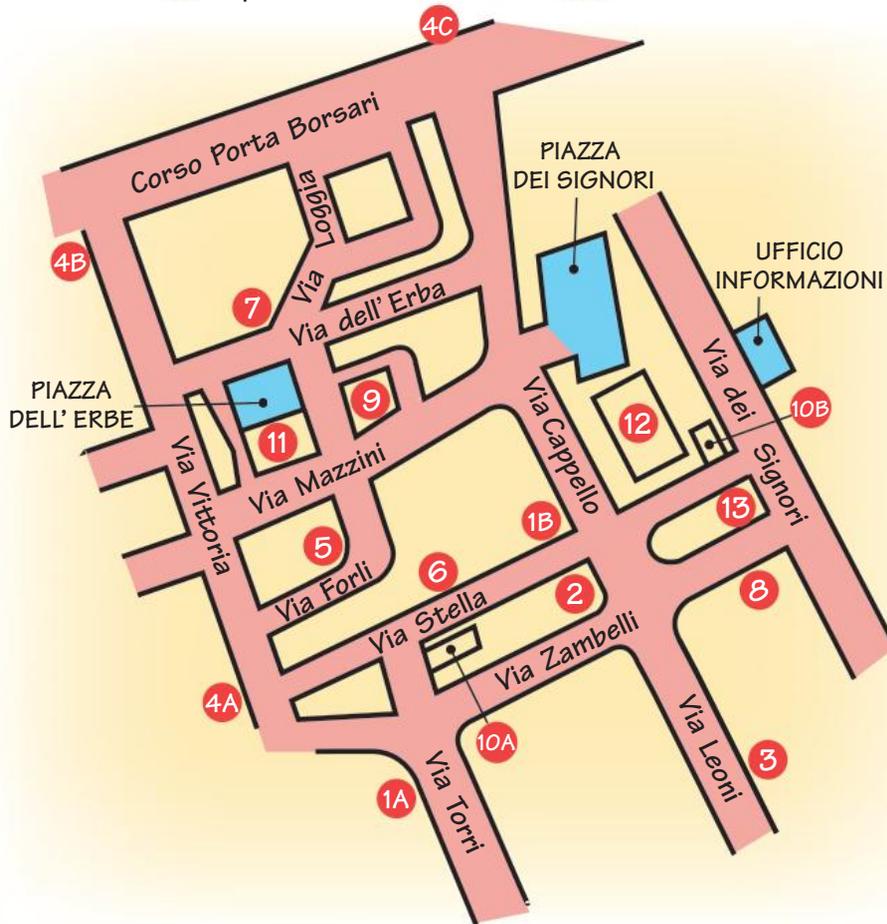
13 l'ufficio postale



12 l'ospedale



11 il museo



5 la farmacia



6 la pasticceria



7 la gelateria



10 il bancomat



9 il supermercato



8 la chiesa



## Tocca a te!

Imagine that you are in the Italian town as shown in the map on page 79. Work with a partner and take turns to ask for and give directions in Italian for the below pictured places around town. Use the map as a guide and follow the **esempio**.

### Esempio



**A:** Dov'è la chiesa?  
**B:** È in Via Zambelli.

1



3



5



2



4



6



## Investigazione Linguistica



### Understanding and giving directions

Here are some basic phrases to use when giving directions in Italian.



**continua/vai dritto** continue/go straight



**gira a destra** turn right



**gira a sinistra** turn left



**sulla destra** on the right

**Esempio** Prendi la prima strada sulla destra.  
Take the first road on the right.



**sulla sinistra** on the left

**Esempio** Prendi la seconda strada sulla sinistra.  
Take the second road on the left.



**attraversa la strada** cross the road

Remember that when giving directions, an instruction or an order in Italian, you change the verb to **l'imperativo** (the imperative form).



Cartelli a Venezia



Examine the table below to see how the verbs **girare**, **prendere** and **seguire** are conjugated in the **tu**, **Lei** and **voi** forms of **l'imperativo**. You should be familiar with the **tu** and **voi** forms from your learning in Chapter 1.

|   | <b>girare</b><br>(to turn) | <b>prendere</b><br>(to take, to catch)       | <b>seguire</b><br>(to follow) |
|---|----------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Imperative instruction for <b>tu</b> (familiar person)  | <b>gira a destra</b>       | <b>prendi la prima strada sulla destra</b>   | <b>segui la strada</b>        |
| Imperative instruction for <b>Lei</b> (formal/polite)   | <b>giri a destra</b>       | <b>prenda la prima strada sulla destra</b>   | <b>segua la strada</b>        |
| Imperative instruction for <b>voi</b> (group of people) | <b>girate a destra</b>     | <b>prendete la prima strada sulla destra</b> | <b>seguite la strada</b>      |

Here are some other useful phrases for saying where something is located.

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <b>a cento metri</b>      | within one hundred metres                                  |
| <b>a pochi passi (da)</b> | a short distance (from)<br>(literally: 'a few steps from') |
| <b>al semaforo</b>        | at the traffic lights                                      |
| <b>all'incrocio</b>       | at the intersection  |
| <b>all'angolo</b>         | on the corner  |

## Attività 5.3

Translate these Italian directions into English, in your exercise book. Beside your translations, write the letter **F** if the direction is for a friend (familiar), the letter **P** to indicate the formal (polite) form, or the letter **G** (group) if the instruction is for more than one person.

**Esempio** **Gira a sinistra.**  $\longrightarrow$  Turn left. (**F**)

- 1 Continui in Via Monteleone, poi giri a destra in Via Mantovani.
- 2 Segua la strada fino in fondo.
- 3 Prendi la seconda strada sulla sinistra.
- 4 Il bancomat è qui vicino; continuate sempre dritto su questa strada.
- 5 L'albergo è in Via Rudolfo. Andate sempre dritto in Via de' Medici e poi girate a sinistra in Via Rudolfo.

### Handy hint

When Nathan and Jessica got lost in the cartoon story earlier in the chapter, they were given directions in the **voi** form of the imperative because the instruction was being given to two people—Nathan and Jessica.

**Continuate** sempre dritto e in fondo **girate** a sinistra. Questa è la Calle dei Forni. **Seguite** la calle fino in fondo e **arrivate** a Piazza San Marco.



### Handy hint

Remember, you use the familiar form when you are talking to a friend, someone your own age or a family member. With anyone else, use the formal or polite form.

# Tocca a te!

Work with a partner and take turns to ask where a place is and give simple directions in Italian. Use the pictures to identify the place and the arrows to specify directions.

## Esempio



**A:** Scusa, dov'è la chiesa?  
**B:** Vai dritto e poi gira a destra.

1



4



2



5



3



6



Un vaporetto sul Canal Grande



## Investigazione Culturale

### Getting around Venezia

The best way to get around **Venezia** is by **vaporetto** and on foot. **Vaporetto** services run along the two main canals, including the Grand Canal and around the outskirts of the city.

The canals in **Venezia** are used for delivering everything. Barges and smaller boats penetrate the side canals, off-loading food, stores and equipment. The canals are also used for emergency services. There are police speedboats and barges, white ambulance boats, and fire boats, which put out about 300 fires a year.



Just like in most old Italian towns, signs naming streets or **piazze** in **Venezia** are found on the sides of buildings rather than on poles on the side of the street.

**Venezia's** watery location has also influenced the unique terms for its streets. Here are some of the more common terms you may see around **Venezia**.

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>la calle</b>  | the Venetian equivalent of the Italian <b>via</b> (street) |
| <b>il canale</b> | the canal  |
| <b>il ponte</b>  | the bridge   |
| <b>il rio</b>    | the (narrow) canal   |
| <b>la riva</b>   | the quay   |

Venice only has one piazza, **Piazza San Marco** (St Mark's Square). The other squares in the city are referred to as **campo**, as in **Campo Santa Margherita**. **Piazza San Marco** has long been **Venezia's** ceremonial gathering place and is a popular area for tourists to stroll, window shop, listen to the orchestras, have a drink and fight off the thousands of pigeons that inhabit the square during the day!



Piazza San Marco



## Attività 5.4



Listen to the audio. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- |            |   |          |          |
|------------|---|----------|----------|
| <b>1 a</b> | Someone is asking for directions to the church.         | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>b</b>   | The church is in Via Garibaldi.                         | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>c</b>   | The school is opposite the church.                      | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>2 a</b> | The group is instructed to catch water-bus number five. | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>b</b>   | The stop to get off at is near the station.             | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>c</b>   | A ticket for three days costs €33,00.                   | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>3 a</b> | The guest house is one hundred metres away.             | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>b</b>   | The guest house is on the left of the <b>piazza</b> .   | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>c</b>   | The guest house is very small.                          | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |

## Attività 5.5

The directions to the pizza restaurant have been broken up and are not in order. Re-order the words to make a sensible set of directions. The English translation below will help you. Write your answer in your exercise book.

*The pizza restaurant is close by. Continue to the end of this street and turn left and then immediately right into Via Delfini. The pizza restaurant is on the right after the pharmacy.*

continui

dopo la farmacia

e giri a sinistra

e poi

in fondo a

in Via Delfini

la pizzeria è

questa via

la pizzeria è

subito a destra

sulla destra

vicino

### Cosa pensi ?

Are the directions in **Attività 5.5** in the familiar (**tu**) or formal (**Lei**) form of the imperative? How can you tell? Why do you think that is?

### Tocca a te!

Practise saying that these places are near, opposite, or a short distance away from another place.

**Esempio** pharmacy/a short distance from/supermarket  
**La farmacia è a pochi passi dal supermercato.**

- 1 automatic teller machine/opposite/hotel
- 2 ice-cream shop/near/pizza restaurant
- 3 post office/near/intersection
- 4 church/a short distance from/school
- 5 pastry shop/opposite/pharmacy
- 6 station/a short distance from/bus stop
- 7 hospital/near/pharmacy
- 8 museum/opposite/supermarket

### Handy hint

Notice in the **Tocca a te!** **esempio** how **da** from **a pochi passi da** joins with the definite article of the noun that follows (**il supermercato**) to become **dal**. You may remember from your learning in Chapter 4 that this construction is called an 'articulated preposition'.



## L'imperativo negativo

You know that **l'imperativo** is used in Italian when giving an order, command or instruction. How would you tell/instruct someone *not* to do something? The same principles apply but you would use the grammar form known as **l'imperativo negativo** (the negative imperative).

Look at these **esempi**:

**Prendi la seconda strada.** (imperative)

**Non prendere la seconda strada.** (negative imperative)

**Prenda la seconda strada.** (imperative)

**Non prenda la seconda strada.** (negative imperative)

**Prendete la seconda strada.** (imperative)

**Non prendete la seconda strada.** (negative imperative)

To form the negative imperative, use **non** + the infinitive form of the verb for the one person **tu** (familiar) form, and simply add **non** before the conjugated verb for the one person **Lei** (formal/polite) and **voi** (plural) forms.

|   | Imperativo                | Imperativo negativo           |
|---|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Instruction for <b>tu</b><br>(familiar person)  | <b>Vai al cinema.</b>     | <b>Non andare al cinema.</b>  |
|   | <b>Prendi il treno.</b>   | <b>Non prendere il treno.</b> |
|   | <b>Segui la strada.</b>   | <b>Non seguire la strada.</b> |
| Instruction for <b>Lei</b><br>(formal/polite)   | <b>Vada al cinema.</b>    | <b>Non vada al cinema.</b>    |
|   | <b>Prenda il treno.</b>   | <b>Non prenda il treno.</b>   |
|   | <b>Segua la strada.</b>   | <b>Non segua la strada.</b>   |
| Instruction for <b>voi</b><br>(group of people) | <b>Andate al cinema.</b>  | <b>Non andate al cinema.</b>  |
|   | <b>Prendete il treno.</b> | <b>Non prendete il treno.</b> |
|   | <b>Seguite la strada.</b> | <b>Non seguite la strada.</b> |



### Cosa pensi ?

What do you think this sign is instructing people not to do in a church?

## Attività 5.6

Change these instructions into **l'imperativo negativo**. Write your answers in your exercise book.

**Esempio** Gira a destra. —————> **Non girare a destra.**

- 1 Giri a sinistra in Via Mantovani.
- 2 Prendete Via Napoleone.
- 3 Scendi alla fermata vicino all'ufficio postale.
- 4 Seguite la strada in fondo.
- 5 Continui dritto su questa strada.



### Cosa pensi ?

Are there any streets or places in your local area that are named after significant people or events?

## Piazze and street names

If you are lucky enough to travel to Italy, you will notice that many of the streets and **piazze** are named after famous Italians, important dates in Italian history, or have some religious significance (e.g. named after a saint or religious event). Among the most common are:

- **Via Giuseppe Mazzini** (a famous Italian patriot and politician who contributed to the formation of the modern Italian state)
- **Via XX settembre** (20 September is the date when Rome became part of Italy in 1870, after the country's unification)
- **Via XXIV maggio** (24 May is the date when Italy entered the First World War)
- **Via XXV aprile** (25 April is the date of Italy's liberation at the end of the Second World War)
- **Via San Paolo** (derives from St Paul, one of the apostles in the Christian faith).



### Attività 5.7



In groups, use library and Internet resources to find out more about the people, dates and historical events that have Italian streets and **piazze** named in their honour. You might want to consider who the person was, when the event occurred, and why the person or event became significant to the Italian people. Present your findings to the class. Here is a list of some examples to get you started.

- **Corso Vittorio Emanuele**
- **Via Giuseppe Garibaldi**
- **Piazza dell'Unità**
- **Piazza Indipendenza**
- **Piazza della Vittoria**
- **Via Cavour**

# Ho una fame da lupo!

Akrim, Stephen and Melanie have been out and about visiting the sights of **Venezia**. They decide to stop for **uno spuntino** (a snack) at a **pizzeria**.



1



Mamma mia, ho fame!  
Mi mangerei un cavallo!

Io non ho molta fame. Stephen,  
vuoi mangiare una pizza alla  
salsiccia a metà con me?

D'accordo, va bene.

2



Buon pomeriggio. Cosa desiderate?

I miei amici vogliono una  
pizza alla salsiccia e io voglio  
una pizza con i funghi e una  
con le patate.

Va bene. Altro?

Sì, un'aranciata  
per favore.

3

Ecco! Una pizza alla salsiccia... una con i funghi... una con le patate... e un'aranciata. Sono €31,00. Buon appetito!



4

Gnam, gnam...  
molto buona!



5

# Talking about food



Here are some expressions to help you talk about food.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Buon appetito!</b>                     | Enjoy your meal! (literally: 'good appetite')                         |
| <b>Da leccarsi i baffi!</b>               | It's finger-licking good! (literally: 'It's moustache-licking good.') |
| <b>Fa schifo!</b>                         | It's disgusting!  |
| <b>Gnam, gnam!</b>                        | Yum, yum!   |
| <b>Ho una fame da lupo!</b>               | I'm starving!/I'm hungry like a wolf!                                 |
| <b>Mi fa venire l'acquolina in bocca.</b> | (It) makes my mouth water.  |
| <b>Mi mangerei un cavallo!</b>            | I could eat a horse.  |



## Attività 5.8

Can you match the Italian toppings on the menu from the cartoon story on page 87 to the English toppings below? Write your answers in your exercise book. Remember to look for cognates.

- olives    vegetables    mushrooms    ham and artichokes  
 sausage    potatoes    ricotta and rocket (leaf vegetable)

## Attività 5.9



Listen to the audio of five people ordering pizza. In your exercise book, make a note in English of the quantity and type of pizza each person chooses, and drinks also ordered and the total cost.

**Esempio** one pizza with mushrooms and sausage, €8,00



Listen to the five dialogues from **Attività 5.9** again and, in your exercise book, note how people order food and give the price in Italian. Then, with a partner, imagine you are at the **pizzeria** from the cartoon story on page 87. What would you order? Use your notes to practise ordering food and giving the price in Italian. If you know other ways of requesting food and responding, try to use them in your conversation.

# Ripasso

1 Nina has become lost while in **Venezia** and stops a man in the street to ask for directions. Complete the missing parts of dialogue, as indicated by the text in brackets, in your exercise book. Once you have done that practise reading the completed dialogue aloud with a partner.

**Nina:** Scusi, dov'è la stazione?

**Signore:** (It is not very far. Take the second street.)

---

**Nina:** Sulla sinistra o sulla destra?

**Signore:** (The second street on the right. It's **Calle Nova del Tabacchi**.)

---

**Nina:** La stazione è in Calle Nova del Tabacchi?

**Signore:** (No, the station is in **Piazzale Roma**. Continue along **Calle Nova del Tabacchi** until the end. Turn to the right and you're in **Piazzale Roma**.)

---



---

**Nina:** Grazie.

**Signore:** Prego.

2 Use the phrases in the following grid to create a dialogue with a partner. You will need to choose phrases from the options in each row and column. Remember to listen to your partner's answers before choosing your responses.

|   |                     |   |
|---|---------------------|---|
| A | Mi scusi,<br>Scusi, | dov'è la gelateria Bianchi?<br>la gelateria Bianchi è lontana?<br>come si arriva in Via Biancaneve? |
|---|---------------------|---|

|   |                                      |   |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|
| B | Continui sempre dritto in Via Verdi. | La gelateria è in fondo.<br>La gelateria è molto vicino all'angolo di Via Verdi e Via Biancaneve.<br>Via Biancaneve è la seconda via. |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|

|   |       |                      |
|---|-------|----------------------|
| A | Sulla | destra?<br>sinistra? |
|---|-------|----------------------|

|   |     |                 |
|---|-----|-----------------|
| B | Sì, | sulla destra.   |
|   | No, | sulla sinistra. |

|   |         |
|---|---------|
| A | Grazie! |
|---|---------|

|   |        |
|---|--------|
| B | Prego. |
|---|--------|

3 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a I want a pizza with sausage.
- b Catch the water-bus at the stop near **Piazza San Marco**. (group instruction)
- c Don't get off at the stop opposite the bridge! (one person, familiar instruction)
- d The coffee is disgusting!
- e Don't turn left, turn right! (one person, formal instruction)
- f Where is the automatic teller machine?
- g The hotel is a short distance from the pizza restaurant.
- h Continue straight and turn right at the end of the street. (one person, formal instruction)

# Riassunto

## Now you can:

### identify key places on a map

|                   |                                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| l'albergo/l'hotel | the hotel                          |
| il bancomat       | the automatic teller machine (ATM) |
| la chiesa         | the church                         |
| la farmacia       | the pharmacy                       |
| la fermata        | the (bus) stop                     |
| la gelateria      | the ice-cream shop                 |
| il museo          | the museum                         |
| l'ospedale        | the hospital                       |
| la pasticceria    | the cake shop                      |
| la pizzeria       | the pizza restaurant               |
| la stazione       | the station                        |
| il supermercato   | the supermarket                    |
| l'ufficio postale | the post office                    |

### order and buy some food

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Voglio una pizza con funghi. | I want a pizza with mushrooms.              |
| Ecco! Sono €7,00.            | Here it is! That's €7,00.                   |
| Pizza toppings:              |   |
| i funghi                     | the mushrooms                               |
| le olive                     | the olives                                  |
| le patate                    | the potatoes                                |
| il prosciutto e i carciofi   | the ham and the artichokes                  |
| la ricotta e la rucola       | the ricotta and the rocket (leaf vegetable) |
| la salsiccia                 | the sausage                                 |
| le verdure                   | the vegetables                              |

### understand, ask for and give directions

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| Dov'è la pensione?   | Where is the guest house?                               |
| È in Via Verdi.      | It's in Via Verdi.                                      |
| continua/vai dritto  | continue/go straight                                    |
| gira a destra        | turn right  |
| gira a sinistra      | turn left   |
| sulla destra         | on the right  |
| sulla sinistra       | on the left   |
| attraversa la strada | cross the road  |
| a cento metri        | within one hundred metres                               |
| a pochi passi (da)   | a short distance (from) (literally: 'a few steps from') |
| al semaforo          | at the traffic lights                                   |
| all'incrocio         | at the intersection                                     |
| all'angolo           | on the corner   |

### use the singular familiar (tu), singular formal (Lei) and plural (voi) of l'imperativo negativo

|                                       | Imperativo         | Imperativo negativo           |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Instruction for tu (familiar person)  | Vai al cinema.     | <b>Non andare</b> al cinema.  |
|                                       | Prendi il treno.   | <b>Non prendere</b> il treno. |
|                                       | Segui la strada.   | <b>Non seguire</b> la strada. |
| Instruction for Lei (formal/polite)   | Vada al cinema.    | <b>Non vada</b> al cinema.    |
|                                       | Prenda il treno.   | <b>Non prenda</b> il treno.   |
|                                       | Segua la strada.   | <b>Non segua</b> la strada.   |
| Instruction for voi (group of people) | Andate al cinema.  | <b>Non andate</b> al cinema.  |
|                                       | Prendete il treno. | <b>Non prendete</b> il treno. |
|                                       | Seguite la strada. | <b>Non seguite</b> la strada. |

# Made in Italy: i prodotti italiani

## You will learn how to:

- describe things and people using the superlative
- say 'some/any' using the partitive **di**
- use Italian words and phrases to shop for presents
- recognise Italian shops and products
- use numbers greater than 100
- avoid repetitions by using direct object pronouns.





# Il migliore del mondo



While in **Venezia**, the Australian sports stars have been invited to take part in a 'face-off' sports competition organised by **Atletitalia** and broadcaster **ItalRadio 5**. Nathan has reached the final of the one-on-one basketball competition. Nina, Akrim and the other students are watching and cheering from the sidelines.

Secondo me, il brasiliano è più bravo. È più alto.

Che cosa dici! Nathan è bravissimo. Lui è più svelto e agile.

Sì, ma il brasiliano è meno stanco.



Bravissimo! Forza Nathan!

Che folla, ascoltatori! Siamo qui a Venezia per l'ultima partita di basket della competizione face-off... la più interessante, la più emozionante e la più seguita del giorno!

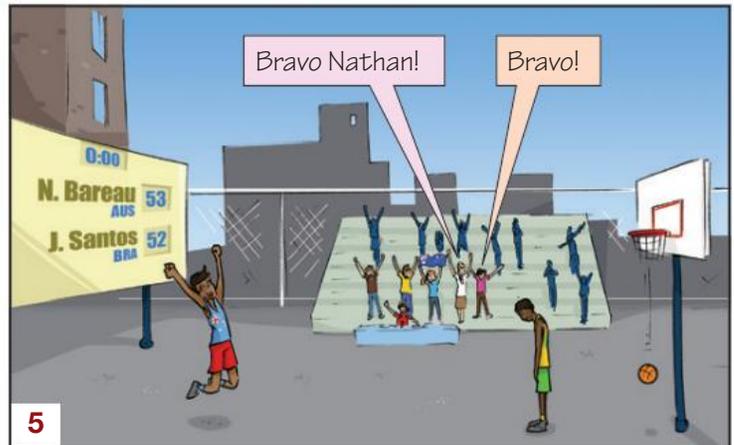
Nathan gioca benissimo. Ma anche José Santos è molto bravo.



Che partita... 52 a 50. Mancano pochi minuti alla fine. Nathan deve giocare meglio se vuole vincere.



Fra i più bravi giocatori del mondo abbiamo qui il giovane australiano Nathan Bateau e José Santos dal Brasile. Chi è il migliore? Fra pochi secondi è tutto finito! Nathan fa l'ultimo tiro a canestro... e segna! L'australiano vince la partita per 53 a 52! Che gioco emozionante!



Bravo Nathan!

Bravo!

**nomi**

|                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>gli ascoltatori</b> | the listeners      |
| <b>il Brasile</b>      | Brazil             |
| <b>il brasiliano</b>   | the Brazilian      |
| <b>la fine</b>         | the end            |
| <b>il mondo</b>        | the world          |
| <b>i secondi</b>       | the seconds (time) |

**aggettivi**

|                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| <b>agile</b>       | agile             |
| <b>buono/a</b>     | good              |
| <b>emozionante</b> | exciting          |
| <b>finito/a</b>    | finished          |
| <b>giovane</b>     | young             |
| <b>migliore</b>    | the best          |
| <b>seguito/a</b>   | popular, followed |
| <b>svelto/a</b>    | quick, fast       |
| <b>ultimo/a</b>    | last, latest      |

**avverbi**

|                         |           |
|-------------------------|-----------|
| <b>benissimo/a/i/e</b>  | very well |
| <b>bravissimo/a/i/e</b> | very good |

**verbi**

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>segna</b>   | he/she/it scores (from <b>segnare</b> —to score) |
| <b>vince</b>   | he/she/it wins (from <b>vincere</b> —to win)     |
| <b>vincere</b> | to win   |

**altre espressioni e parole**

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>bravo!</b>               | well done!  |
| <b>che cosa dici!</b>       | what do you mean! (literally: 'what are you saying?') |
| <b>che folla!</b>           | what a crowd!   |
| <b>mancano pochi minuti</b> | there's few minutes left                              |
| <b>tiro a canestro</b>      | shot at the basket                                    |

## Attività 6.1

Look at the cartoon story on page 92 again. Answer these questions, in English, in your exercise book.

- 1 When (date) and where are the face-off sports events being held?
- 2 What do Nina and Melanie disagree about?
- 3 What is Akrim's opinion of the match-up between Nathan and his opponent?
- 4 What information does the radio DJ give about the game?
- 5 Who wins the one-on-one basketball game?



### Investigazione Linguistica

## Better or best? Comparative and relative superlative

The comparative, you may recall from your learning in Chapter 4, is used to say that something is better/not as good, nicer/not as nice etc. than something else. In other words, it is used to compare things (nouns), qualities (adjectives) and actions (verbs).

### Esempi

**Alessandro è più vecchio di Akrim.**

Alessandro is older than Akrim.

**Nathan è più svelto di José.** Nathan is quicker than José.

The comparative is formed using **più** (more) or **meno** (less) and an adjective. The preposition **di** is used to translate 'than'.

To say that something is 'the most', 'the least', 'the best', 'the tallest' and so on, the relative superlative is used. Look at the following examples:

|                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>la casa più piccola</b>    | the smallest house                |
| <b>il gelato meno cremoso</b> | the least creamy ice-cream        |
| <b>il ragazzo più alto</b>    | the tallest boy                   |
| <b>le gondole meno veloci</b> | the least fast (slowest) gondolas |

The definite article is used with the relevant noun plus **più** or **meno** and the adjective. Remember, the adjective will need to change its ending to agree with the noun it is describing.



### Handy hint

Automobile brands are feminine in Italian (e.g. **la Fiat, la Ferrari, l'Alfa Romeo**). This is because the word for car is feminine: **l'automobile/ la macchina**.

**La Fiat 500 è l'auto più bella dell'anno**

Observe the following sentences:

| Comparative  | Relative superlative  |
|--|---|
| <b>Venezia è più grande di Capri.</b><br>Venice is bigger than Capri.                      | <b>Verona è la città più grande del Veneto.</b><br>Verona is the largest city in Veneto.                    |
| <b>I vaporetti sono più veloci delle gondole.</b><br>Water-buses are faster than gondolas. | <b>Questo è il vaporetto meno veloce di Venezia.</b><br>This is the least fast/slowest water-bus in Venice. |

The preposition **di** (+ the definite article in some cases) has been used in both the comparative and the relative superlative phrases. In the comparative, **di** is used in both examples to translate 'than'. In the relative superlative, **di** is used to translate 'in'.

Some adjectives have regular as well as irregular comparative and relative superlative forms. The examples that follow show the most common of these.

| Adjective        | Comparative   | Relative superlative  | Example  |
|------------------|---|---|--|
| <b>buono/a</b>   | <b>più buono/a</b> (better)<br><b>migliore</b> (better) | <b>il/la più buono/a</b> (the best)<br><b>il/la migliore</b> (the best)     | <b>La migliore pizza di tutta l'Italia.</b> (The best pizza in all of Italy.)  |
| <b>cattivo/a</b> | <b>più cattivo/a</b> (worse)<br><b>peggiore</b> (worse) | <b>il/la più cattivo/a</b> (the worst)<br><b>il/la peggiore</b> (the worst) | <b>Il peggiore ristorante della città.</b> (The worst restaurant in the city.) |

## Attività 6.2

Give your opinion (using **Secondo me...**) about the things listed below by using the relative superlative. Don't forget to change the ending of the adjective if the noun is feminine and/or plural! Write your answers in your exercise book. Follow the example provided.

**Esempio** la musica classica o la musica rock (bello)  
**Secondo me, la musica classica è la più bella.**  
I think classical music is the nicer (of the two).

- il gelato al cioccolato o al limone (buono)
- il calcio o il football australiano (interessante)
- la Ferrari o la Holden (veloce)
- la matematica o le scienze (facile)
- la pizza o la bistecca (delizioso)
- i cani o i gatti (intelligente)

## Handy hint

If it is obvious what is being spoken about, the noun can be omitted in relative superlative phrasing. For example:

**Mi piace questa maglietta.**

I like this T-shirt.

**Sì, è la più bella.**

Yes, it's the prettiest.

**Prendo questo DVD.**

I'll get this DVD.

**Ma è il più caro!**

But it's the most expensive!

## Cosa pensi ?

What do you think the title of this Italian film means?





## The absolute best! Absolute superlative

In the cartoon story earlier in the chapter, Jessica and Akrim used the words **bravissimo** and **benissimo** to describe Nathan's play in the basketball game. The **-issimo** ending can be added to an adjective to indicate that something is 'very + adjective'.

For example, **buonissimo** can be used instead of **molto buono** to mean 'very good', **bellissimo** instead of **molto bello** to say 'very beautiful' and **interessantissimo** can replace **molto interessante** if something is 'very interesting'.

It is important to remember that these **-issimo** forms need to agree with the noun being described.

- Esempi** una pizza **piccolissima** a very small pizza  
 le macchine **velocissime** the very fast cars



### Attività 6.3

Add **-issimo**, **-issima**, **-issimi**, or **-issime** to each of the adjectives listed below. You will need to decide which ending to use based on the gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural) of what is being described. Write your answers in your exercise book.

**Esempio** la piazza grande → **la piazza grandissima**

- 1 la sorella alta
- 2 i cantanti famosi
- 3 l'aeroplano veloce
- 4 le attrici comiche
- 5 il cane intelligente
- 6 le gonne corte

### Cosa pensi?

As you learnt in Chapter 3, many musical terms come from the Italian language (e.g. **pianissimo** and **fortissimo**). What direction do you think these notations are giving to musicians reading the music?



## Il Carnevale

**Il Carnevale** (the Carnival) is a centuries old tradition that is observed throughout most of Italy. It is a time of celebration before the Christian season of Lent (a period of forty days before Easter in which Christians are encouraged to 'give up' luxuries). Traditionally, Catholics gave up eating meat on Fridays during Lent and it is possible that this is where the word **carnevale** (from the Latin 'farewell to meat') originates. **Il Carnevale** in Italy is historically regarded as a time to celebrate and an opportunity to indulge in treats before the start of Lent.

Today **il Carnevale** is predominantly an occasion for Italian children to dress up in costumes and take part in parades and competitions. In Italian cities like **Venezia**, Viareggio, Ivrea and others, however, there are many organised events and celebrations for all age groups, including masked balls, costume parades and public events.

A Venetian tradition is to wear **le maschere** (masks) during **il Carnevale**. As part of the festivities in **Venezia** during this time of year (in the ten days before Shrove Tuesday) you will often see people dressed in Venetian costumes, wandering through the narrow **calle** of **Venezia**. The masks and costumes can be very ornate and made of luxurious materials.

### Cosa pensi ?

Do you know of an event similar to **il Carnevale** that is practised in your community?



### Attività 6.4



What else can you find out about **il Carnevale** in Italy? Do some research on the Internet and share your findings with the class.



Le maschere e i costumi di Carnevale

# Facciamo shopping



Stephen, Nathan and Akrim are out doing some souvenir shopping in **Venezia**. They wander into a shop that sells typical Venetian products—Murano glass, **maschere di Carnevale**, lace from the island of Burano and leather goods.





## ABC Glossario

### nomi

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>gli anelli (di fidanzamento)</b> | the (engagement) rings                       |
| <b>i braccialetti</b>               | the bracelets                                |
| <b>la cartapesta</b>                | the papier-mâché                             |
| <b>la ceramica</b>                  | the ceramic                                  |
| <b>la confezione regalo</b>         | the giftwrap (literally: 'the gift package') |
| <b>le cornici</b>                   | the frames                                   |
| <b>gli orecchini</b>                | the earrings                                 |
| <b>la pelle</b>                     | the leather                                  |
| <b>le perline</b>                   | the beads (jewellery)                        |
| <b>il regalo</b>                    | the gift                                     |
| <b>il vetro</b>                     | the glass                                    |

### pronomi

**lo, la, li, le** 'it' or 'them' when referring to something already mentioned

### verbi

**sbrigati** hurry up (you) (from **sbrigarsi**—to hurry up)  
**spendere** to spend

### altre espressioni e parole

**beh...** well ... (expression)  
**è/sono in offerta** it is/they are on special  
**qualcosa in particolare** something in particular  
**senz'altro** of course  
**sono appena arrivati** they have just arrived  
**sono all'ultima moda** they are the latest fashion/trend  
**zitto/a!** be quiet!

## Attività 6.5

Look at the cartoon story on pages 98–9 again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- 1 Stephen is looking for a gift for his girlfriend. **V F**
- 2 The frames come in leather, glass and ceramic. **V F**
- 3 There are **Carnevale** masks made from papier-mâché. **V F**
- 4 Akrim wants to buy an engagement ring. **V F**
- 5 Stephen buys three bracelets for €20,00. **V F**

Ha degli anelli di fidanzamento? Li possiamo vedere?



### Investigazione Linguistica

#### Some or any: partitives

The simplest way to translate the English equivalent of 'some' or 'any' in Italian is to use the preposition **di** + the definite article of the noun that follows. You have already seen this construction when you looked at articulated prepositions. When **di** + the definite article are combined to mean 'some' or 'any', it is grammatically referred to as a 'partitive'. Look at the table below.

| Preposition | Definite article        |                           |                           |                           |                        |                           |                            |
|-------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
|             | il                      | la                        | l'                        | lo                        | i                      | le                        | gli                        |
| di          | di + il<br>= <b>del</b> | di + la<br>= <b>della</b> | di + l'<br>= <b>dell'</b> | di + lo<br>= <b>dello</b> | di + i<br>= <b>dei</b> | di + le<br>= <b>delle</b> | di + gli<br>= <b>degli</b> |

**Esempi** Ho **delle** collane e anche **degli** orecchini.  
I have some necklaces and also some earrings.

**Ci sono dei** gioielli veneziani nel negozio?  
Are there any Venetian jewels in the shop?

## Attività 6.6

Use the preposition **di** + the appropriate definite article to express these phrases in Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

**Esempio** some/any mobile phones → **dei cellulari**

- 1 some/any pizza
- 2 some/any rings
- 3 some/any music
- 4 some/any cats
- 5 some/any time
- 6 some/any water
- 7 some/any churches
- 8 some/any trains

# Cosa regaliamo?



What shall we give?

Not sure what to give as a gift to someone special?  
Here are some suggestions.



## Attività 6.7

Which of the potential gifts listed above would you buy the following people? Look at the pictures of each person to work out what they might like as a gift. Follow the **esempio** and write your answers in your exercise book.

### Esempio



Compro dei cioccolatini per mia nonna Matilde.

1



3



2



4



# I negozi

## The shops

Here is a list of some common types of shops that you may come across in a typical Italian city or town.

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <b>gli articoli sportivi</b>       | sells sporting goods                                 |
| <b>la boutique</b>                 | sells fashion clothing                               |
| <b>la cartoleria</b>               | sells paper products, stationery and sometimes gifts |
| <b>la gioielleria</b>              | sells jewellery                                      |
| <b>il grande magazzino</b>         | sells a range of products (like a department store)  |
| <b>la libreria</b>                 | sells books  |
| <b>il negozio di abbigliamento</b> | sells clothing                                       |
| <b>il negozio di giocattoli</b>    | sells toys   |
| <b>il negozio di scarpe</b>        | sells shoes  |
| <b>il negozio di souvenir</b>      | sells souvenirs                                      |
| <b>la pelletteria</b>              | sells leather goods                                  |
| <b>la profumeria</b>               | sells beauty products, perfumes and associated items |

### Cosa pensi ?

Are the shops you may come across in Italy the same as shops you would expect to find in an Australian city or town? Discuss any similarities or differences.



la libreria



la boutique



la cartoleria

## Tocca a te!

### Cosa compri? Dove compri?

(What will you buy? Where will you buy?)

With a partner, take turns saying in Italian what gifts you would buy for different people, and what shops you would buy these gifts from in Italy.

### Che regalo vuoi comprare e dove lo compri...

- 1 ...per tua madre o tuo padre?
- 2 ...per tua sorella o tuo fratello?
- 3 ...per la tua amica o il tuo amico?
- 4 ...per l'insegnante di matematica o l'insegnante d'italiano?

## Tocca a te!

Imagine you are on holiday in Italy and you want to buy a present for the following people back home:

- 1 your Italian teacher
- 2 your best friend.

With a partner or in a group, prepare a dialogue based on shopping for one gift. Create a scenario so that everyone involved has a part to play. For example, a shop assistant and a customer, or a shop assistant, a customer and a stranger being asked for an opinion etc. You can use the shopping expressions in the cartoon story on pages 98–9 and some of your own. Write your script(s) in your exercise book and practise your dialogue then present it as a pair/group to the class.

## Investigazione Culturale

### Shopping hours

As a general practice, shops in Italy are open six days a week, from Monday to Saturday. Trading hours are from 9.00 a.m. to 12.30 p.m., when shops close for lunch and then re-open at 3.30 p.m. or later, until around 8.00 p.m. in summer (7.00 p.m. in winter months).

In some of the larger tourist cities in Italy, some shops remain open all day long (**orario continuato**) to take advantage of tourists and people shopping in their lunch-breaks. Some supermarkets and other specialty stores may also open for trading on Sunday.

## Handy hint

Look at the list of **regali** and **negozi** on pages 101–2 to help you decide which gifts you will buy and where you will buy them.

## Cosa pensi ?

Are the shopping hours in Italy the same as those where you live? If not, why do you think they are different?

GENTILE CLIENTE,

LA INFORMIAMO CHE  
A PARTIRE DAL 04.05.2009  
QUESTA AGENZIA OSSERVA  
IL SEGUENTE ORARIO DI  
APERTURA:  
MATTINO 8.20 - 13.20  
POMERIGGIO 14.30 - 16.00

UniCredit Banca di Roma



## Il made in Italy

The phenomenon **il made in Italy** refers to the fact that certain Italian products and brands are held in such regard in other parts of the world that to have an object with a tag 'made in Italy' on it indicates that the object is of high quality, superior craftsmanship and stylish design.

Italy's fame stretches across a range of areas, including motor vehicles, fashion, jewellery and accessories, leather goods, textiles and home wares.



Un'Alfa Romeo



I prodotti di moda, scarpe e pelle

| Area                    | Brands/products   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Automobiles             | <b>Ferrari</b> —founded in 1928 by Enzo Ferrari; the company originally focused on racing cars then expanded to producing street vehicles in 1947<br><b>Alfa Romeo</b> —was established in Milan in 1910 and has been part of the FIAT group since 1986 |
| Motorcycles/ scooters   | <b>Ducati</b> —was founded in Bologna in 1926 as a small, family business producing radio components, and has grown to become an international motorcycle brand   |
| Fashion                 | <b>Versace</b> —was originally a fashion house, but now also produces accessories, fragrances and home wares<br><b>Armani</b> —was created by Giorgio Armani who is a celebrated and influential Italian fashion designer                               |
| Jewellery               | <b>Bulgari</b> —usually written as BVLGARI in the ancient Roman style; this company originally made its name in jewellery, but today is associated with many products, including watches and handbags   |
| Eye glasses/ sunglasses | <b>Luxottica</b> —originates from north-east Italy and is one of the world's largest eyewear manufactures   |
| Shoes/leather goods     | <b>Fendi</b> —launched in 1925 as a maker of fur and leather products, Fendi's product range now includes fragrances, watches and eyewear   |
| Textiles                | <b>Missoni</b> —a family-run business that was established in 1958 and is renowned for its bright, colourful designs in knitwear and fabrics  |
| Home wares              | <b>Alessi</b> —dates back to the 1930s as one of the world's leading manufacturers of designer kitchen and tableware  |



## Prodotti artigianali

Also associated with **il made in Italy** are a range of **prodotti artigianali** (handcrafted products) that are examples of traditional methods of production and are usually associated with a particular town or region of Italy. These products are often purchased by tourists as 'high quality' souvenirs. Some of these include:

**Il vetro di Murano**—Murano, an island of **Venezia**, has been the heart of Venetian glass making for over 800 years. Several glass factories, some dating back hundreds of years, are still in production today

**La frutta al marzapane**—typically Sicilian, marzipan fruit is an intricate depiction of fruit using marzipan (almond and sugar paste usually used for icing and decorating cakes)

**Il limoncello**—a lemon liqueur made from lemons grown in southern Italian coastal areas, such as Sorrento

**Il marmo di Carrara**—the famous white or blue-grey marble of Carrara has been used since ancient times

**L'aceto balsamico**—balsamic vinegar has been made in the area around Modena/Reggio Emilia since medieval times.



il vetro di Murano



la frutta al marzapane

### Cosa pensi ?

Have you come across any of the brands or products mentioned in the **Investigazione culturale**? Are you familiar with any other Italian products or brands that support the idea of **il made in Italy**? Can you think of any Australian products or brands that may have a similar global awareness?

## Attività 6.8

In groups, research at least one Italian brand or product that is famous around the world. Report your findings to the class in a presentation method approved by your teacher. In your research, you may want to consider:

- what the brand or product is
- where it is manufactured in Italy
- the origins (history) of the brand or product
- which countries (other than Italy) are the main consumers of the brand or product
- whether the brand or product is available in Australia.



# Numbers greater than 100

To express numbers greater than 100 in Italian, use the information below to start you off on the counting pattern.

|     |                        |      |             |           |                            |
|-----|------------------------|------|-------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| 100 | cento                  | 500  | cinquecento | 1438      | millequattrocentotrentotto |
| 101 | centouno               | 600  | seicento    | 2000      | duemila                    |
| 123 | centoventitré          | 700  | settecento  | 2220      | duemiladuecentoventi       |
| 200 | duecento               | 800  | ottocento   | 3000      | tremila                    |
| 257 | duecentocinquantesette | 900  | novecento   | 10 000    | diecimila                  |
| 300 | trecento               | 1000 | mille       | 1 million | un milione                 |
| 400 | quattrocento           | 1012 | milledodici | 2 million | due milioni                |

## Handy hint

When writing prices in the euro that include cents, Italians use a comma rather than a decimal point (e.g. €12,50).

## Attività 6.1



Listen to the audio of four shopping conversations. For each dialogue, make a note in English of the item that is being discussed, the price and whether the customer buys it or not. Write your answers in your exercise book.



## Investigazione Linguistica

### Direct object pronouns

A direct object pronoun is used to replace a noun that has already been mentioned. Look at the sentences below:

**Che collana bellissima! La prendo!**

What a beautiful necklace! I'll take *it*!

**Ecco il libro! Lo vuoi?** Here's the book. Do you want *it*?

**Lo** and **la** in these sentences are examples of direct object pronouns. They are used to replace the noun referring to an object, item or person and take its place, generally *before* the verb.

In the first example, **la** is used to replace **collana**, which was mentioned in the first part of the example. In the second example, **lo** replaces **libro**. So **lo** and **la** (translated as 'it' in English) replace an object (noun) that has been mentioned before.



Why do you think **la** is used to translate 'it' in one example and **lo** in the other? **La collana** is a singular feminine noun so **la** is used to replace it in the sentence. **Il libro** is a singular masculine noun, therefore **lo** is used as its replacement.

Direct object pronouns can be singular or plural depending on what is being replaced. In the same manner as **la** and **lo**, the pronouns **le** and **li** can also be used to replace nouns.

**Che scarpe bellissime! Le prendo!**

What beautiful shoes! I'll take *them*!

**Ecco i CD! Li vuoi?** Here are the CDs! Do you want *them*?

Look at the examples that follow. Can you work out what word in the first part of the example is being replaced by the direct object pronoun in the second part?

**Chi è quella ragazza? Non la conosco.**

Who is that girl? I don't know *her*.

**Viene Matteo. Lo conosci?** Matteo is coming. Do you know *him*?

**Marina e Sofia arrivano alle due. Le incontriamo in piazza davanti alla stazione.**

Marina and Sofia are arriving at two. We'll meet *them* in the town square in front of the station.

**I ragazzi sono in ritardo. Li chiamo subito.**

The boys are late. I'll call *them* immediately.

### Handy hint

Remember, direct object pronouns go before the verb.

## Attività 6.10

Which direct object pronoun (**lo**, **la**, **li** or **le**) would you use to replace each of these nouns? The definite articles have not been included, so take note of the last letters of the nouns to help you decide which direct object pronoun to use. Write your answers in your exercise book.

**Esempio** ragazze → **le**

- 1 partita
- 2 pappagallo
- 3 anelli
- 4 macchina
- 5 maschere
- 6 trombe
- 7 supermercato
- 8 festa
- 9 gruppi
- 10 musei



## Attività 6.11

Use the phrases in the following grid to create a dialogue with a partner. You will need to choose phrases from the options in each row and column. Remember to listen to your partner's answers before choosing your responses.

|          |             |           |
|----------|-------------|-----------|
| <b>A</b> | Buongiorno. | Desidera? |
|          | Buonasera.  |           |

|          |                  |                |
|----------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>B</b> | Vorrei...        | una maglietta. |
|          | Vorrei vedere... | una sciarpa.   |
|          |                  | dei pullover.  |
|          |                  | delle cornici. |

|          |                        |
|----------|------------------------|
| <b>A</b> | Quanto vuole spendere? |
|----------|------------------------|

|          |       |          |
|----------|-------|----------|
| <b>B</b> |       | €20,00.  |
|          | Circa | €50,00.  |
|          |       | €120,00. |

|          |          |                  |          |
|----------|----------|------------------|----------|
| <b>A</b> | Questa   | maglietta        | è bella. |
|          | Le piace | sciarpa          |          |
|          |          | questo pullover? |          |
|          |          | questa cornice?  |          |

|          |                         |               |
|----------|-------------------------|---------------|
| <b>B</b> | Sì, è molto bello.      | Quanto costa? |
|          | Sì, è molto bella.      |               |
|          | Non mi piace il colore. |               |

|          |                             |               |          |
|----------|-----------------------------|---------------|----------|
| <b>A</b> | È in offerta. Solo €105,00. | lo abbiamo in | marrone. |
|          | Sì,                         | la abbiamo in | blu.     |

|          |                  |     |    |         |           |
|----------|------------------|-----|----|---------|-----------|
| <b>B</b> | Costa troppo!    | Non | lo | prendo. | Ha altro? |
|          | Non costa molto. | Sì, | la | prendo. |           |

|          |                                 |                 |
|----------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>A</b> | Mi dispiace. Non abbiamo altro. | Buona giornata. |
|          | Sono €105,00.                   | Buonasera.      |

|          |                    |
|----------|--------------------|
| <b>B</b> | Arrivederci.       |
|          | Ecco. Arrivederci. |

### Handy hint

If B selects **Ha altro?** then A may choose to offer some other products and go back to an earlier stage in the conversation.

# Ripasso

1 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.  
Hint: You will need to use direct object pronouns for some of them.

- a Louis is the fastest boy in the class.
- b These bracelets are nice. Do you want them?
- c Fabio is older than Ali, but Joshua is the oldest.
- d I like this jacket. I'll take it!
- e Who is that boy? I don't know him.

2 Identify the relative superlative phrases in these sentences. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** Secondo me, gli italiani sono i piloti più bravi di Formula Uno.

- a Marco Polo è l'esploratore più famoso d'Italia.
- b Roma è la città meno moderna d'Italia.
- c L'Australia è l'isola più grande del mondo.
- d Carla è la ragazza meno giovane del gruppo.
- e Questo è il bambino più cattivo della famiglia.

3 Use the absolute superlative (**-issimo, -issima, -issimi, -issime**) to translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

**Esempio** The Ferrari is very fast. —————> **La Ferrari è velocissima.**

- a The film is very good.
- b Latin is very hard.
- c Swimming is very boring.
- d That girl is very creative.
- e Paula is not very tall.

4 Listen to the sentences describing **Venezia** and take note of the number above 100 mentioned in each piece of audio. Then write the number in words, in Italian, in your exercise book.



5 Listen to the department store announcements about products on special. As you listen, take notes in English in your exercise book, listing the product(s) being advertised, what information is provided about the product(s) and the price/offer. The first has been done for you as an example.



**Esempio**

| Product                  | Information provided   | Price/offer |
|--------------------------|--|-------------|
| 'Made in Italy' T-shirts | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• many colours</li><li>• store on the second floor</li></ul> | €40,00      |

# Riassunto

## Now you can:

### describe things and people using the superlative

| Relative superlative  | Absolute superlative   |
|---|--|
| Verona è la città <b>più grande del</b> Veneto.<br>Verona is the largest city in Veneto.                    | Roma è una città <b>grandissima</b> .<br>Rome is a very big city.    |
| Questo è il vaporetto <b>meno veloce di</b> Venezia.<br>This is the least fast/slowest water-bus in Venice. | Questo motorino è <b>velocissimo</b> .<br>This scooter is very fast. |

### say 'some/any' using the partitive di

| Preposition | Definite article |                    |                    |                    |                 |                    |                     |
|-------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------------|---------------------|
|             | il               | la                 | l'                 | lo                 | i               | le                 | gli                 |
| di          | di + il<br>= del | di + la<br>= della | di + l'<br>= dell' | di + lo<br>= dello | di + i<br>= dei | di + le<br>= delle | di + gli<br>= degli |

Ho **delle** collane e anche **degli** orecchini.  
Ci sono **dei** gioielli veneziani nel negozio?

I have some necklaces and also some earrings.  
Are there any Venetian jewels in the shop?

### use Italian words and phrases to shop for presents

|                             |                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| i biglietti per un concerto | the concert tickets               |
| il CD di musica             | the music CD                      |
| i cioccolatini              | the chocolates                    |
| la collana                  | the necklace                      |
| i libri                     | the books                         |
| il lettore MP3              | the MP3 player                    |
| la macchina fotografica     | the photographic camera           |
| la maschera veneziana       | the Venetian mask                 |
| l'orologio                  | the watch, the clock              |
| il portafoglio              | the wallet                        |
| il profumo                  | the perfume                       |
| il vaso di vetro di Murano  | the Murano glass vase             |
| Desidera?                   | Can I help you?                   |
| Cerco un regalo per...      | I'm looking for a present for ... |

### recognise Italian shops

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| gli articoli sportivi       | sells sporting goods                                 |
| la boutique                 | sells fashion clothing                               |
| la cartoleria               | sells paper products, stationery and sometimes gifts |
| la gioielleria              | sells jewellery                                      |
| il grande magazzino         | sells a range of products (like a department store)  |
| la libreria                 | sells books  |
| il negozio di abbigliamento | sells clothing                                       |
| il negozio di giocattoli    | sells toys   |
| il negozio di scarpe        | sells shoes  |
| il negozio di souvenir      | sells souvenirs                                      |
| la pelletteria              | sells leather goods                                  |
| la profumeria               | sells beauty products, perfumes and associated items |

### avoid repetitions by using direct object pronouns

Chi è quella ragazza? Non **la** conosco.  
Viene Matteo. **Lo** conosci?  
Marina e Sofia arrivano alle due. **Le** incontriamo in piazza davanti alla stazione.  
I ragazzi sono in ritardo. **Li** chiamo subito.

Who is that girl? I don't know *her*.  
Matteo is coming. Do you know *him*?  
Marina and Sofia are arriving at two. We'll meet *them* in the town square in front of the station.  
The boys are late. I'll call *them* immediately.

# Il mare e la montagna: la geografia d'Italia

## You will learn how to:

- talk about past events and experiences using the past tense (**il passato prossimo**)
- use **essere** with certain verbs to form **il passato prossimo**
- recognise Italian geographical features
- use adverbs to express how and how often you do activities
- understand what dialects are and why they exist in Italy.



# Il tempo vola!



19 Jessica and Stephen are at Alessandro's place looking at photos on the computer that they have taken of their time in Italy thus far. Alessandro is also keen to see their photos and hear about their memorable experiences.

Jessica, ti ricordi il primo giorno che siamo arrivati in Italia?

Sì, e un paio di giorni dopo siamo usciti con Alessandro. Ti ricordi Alessandro?

Sì, mi ricordo. Come vola il tempo!

1

Pensiamo un po'... dove siamo andati? A Roma, a Venezia, e tu sei andata in Liguria, vero?

Sì, ho fatto un bel giro di Genova. Sono andata anche in montagna con la famiglia che mi ospita. Vanno spesso a sciare d'inverno.

2

Beata te! Sei riuscita a sciare?

Macché! Sono caduta per terra costantemente! Sono tornata a casa con il sedere dolorante!!

3

Poverina! Non ti preoccupare Jessica. Tutte le piste sono difficili all'inizio. Quanto tempo siete rimasti in montagna? Dove siete andati?

Siamo stati tre giorni sul Monte Bianco, sul confine francese.

Ah sì, in Valle d'Aosta. È la più alta montagna in Italia.

4

Jessica, secondo te, qual è stata l'esperienza più bella del viaggio?

Mmm... forse quando sono entrata nella Basilica di San Pietro a Roma. È stupenda! Che peccato che non abbiamo visto il Papa.

5

E per te, Stephen?

Per me, la cosa più bella è stata quando sono andato al liceo scientifico con Nathan e Caterina. Guarda questa foto di noi davanti al liceo. Caterina è stata molto carina...

6

Infatti... non voglio tornare in Australia! Ci vuole una vita per vedere tutto e ci sono ancora tantissime ragazze italiane da incontrare...



Non basta una vita!

Che cosa dici, Stephen! Puoi tornare in Italia un'altra volta. Forse con la tua ragazza australiana... te la ricordi?

7

**ABC Glossario**

**nomi**

- il confine** the border
- l'esperienza** the experience
- l'inizio** the beginning
- il Papa** the Pope
- le piste** the ski slopes
- il sedere** the bottom, the backside
- il viaggio** the trip

**aggettivi**

- dolorante** sore, aching
- tantissimo/a/i/e** many

**avverbi**

- ancora** still
- costantemente** constantly
- spesso** often

**verbi**

- sono andata** I went (*f*) (from **andare**—to go)
- sono andato** I went (*m*) (from **andare**—to go)
- sei andata** you went (*f*) (from **andare**—to go)
- siamo andati** we went (from **andare**—to go)
- siete andati** you (plural) went (from **andare**—to go)
- siamo arrivati** we arrived (from **arrivare**—to arrive)
- sono caduta** I fell (*f*) (from **cadere**—to fall)
- sono entrata** I entered (*f*) (from **entrare**—to enter)
- ho fatto** I did (from **fare**—to do/to make)



**siete rimasti**  
**sei riuscita**  
**è stata**  
**siamo stati**  
**sono tornata**  
**siamo usciti**  
**abbiamo visto**

you (plural) remained (from **rimanere**—to remain)  
 you managed to (f) (from **riuscire**—to manage to)  
 he/she/it was (from **stare**—to be/to stay)  
 we stayed (from **stare**—to stay/to be)  
 I returned (f) (from **tornare**—to return)  
 we went out (from **uscire**—to go out)  
 we saw (from **vedere**—to see)

### altre espressioni e parole

**beato/a te!**  
**che peccato**  
**ci vuole una vita**  
**come vola il tempo!**  
**infatti**  
**macché!**  
**non basta una vita!**  
**pensiamo un po'**  
**poverina!**  
**te la ricordi?**  
**un'altra volta**  
**un paio di giorni dopo**

lucky you!  
 what a shame  
 you need a lifetime  
 how time flies!  
 as a matter of fact  
 of course not!  
 a lifetime isn't long enough!  
 let's think for a bit  
 poor thing! (f)  
 do you remember her?  
 another time  
 a couple of days later



la spiaggia

## Attività 7.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Jessica has been to Rome, Venice and Genoa.                                       | V | F |
| 2 | Jessica is a very capable skier.  | V | F |
| 3 | Jessica went skiing on a mountain on the French border.                           | V | F |
| 4 | Alessandro says <b>Monte Bianco</b> is Italy's biggest mountain.                  | V | F |
| 5 | Stephen's most wonderful experience of the trip was entering St Peter's Basilica. | V | F |
| 6 | Stephen wants to stay in Italy to meet many more Italian girls.                   | V | F |



### Investigazione Culturale



## Il mare e la montagna

In the summer months in Italy (from **giugno** to **agosto**), you will find many Italians soaking up the sun and relaxing on the beach. Businesses within cities will often close for the month of August, as many Italians flock to the coast for a seaside holiday.



Italy's coastline stretches 7600 kilometres, with much of this area dedicated to beaches. Several Italian beaches are quite different to what most people are used to in Australia—those located along the Mediterranean coast are covered in **le rocce** (rocks). This does not stop local beachgoers though, who are more than happy to lie on the sun-kissed rocks.

Some of the most popular beachside towns in Italy include: Rimini and Riccione in the **Mare Adriatico** (Adriatic Sea), Sorrento and Amalfi in the **Mar Tirreno** (Tyrrhenian Sea) and of course the islands of Sicily, Sardinia and the smaller islands of Elba and Capri.

Many Australians would be shocked to discover that you often have to pay to spend time on some beaches in Italy! Access to the water itself is **gratis** (free), but if your beach experience involves **prendere il sole** (sunbathing), you will need to hire **una sdraio** (a sun bed) and **un ombrellone** (a beach umbrella) for the period you intend to stay at the beach.

During the winter months in Italy (from **dicembre** to **febbraio**), **le Alpi** (the Alps) in the north and **gli Appennini** (the Apennines) running down the centre of the country are occupied by tourists and locals for the snow holiday season.

Italy is covered by approximately 37 per cent of mountainous terrain, so it's not surprising that skiing is a popular winter sport. Italian families will often spend **la settimana bianca** (the week between Christmas and New Year's Day) on the ski slopes in places like Cervinia, Courmayeur, Cortina d'Ampezzo and Madonna di Campiglio.

For those of you who are **principianti** (beginners) when it comes to skiing, a word of advice—stay away from **le piste nere**! They are for **gli sciatori professionisti** (the professional skiers).

## Cosa pensi ?

'To sunbathe' in Italian is **prendere il sole**. **Il sole** is 'the sun'. Can you think of any words in English that are similar to **sole** and are associated with the sun?



la montagna



il mare

## Cosa pensi ?

Discuss the differences between Italian and Australian beaches with a partner.

- 1 Have you ever been to a beach like the one pictured on page 114? What differences can you see between beaches in Italy and beaches in Australia?
- 2 Have you ever been to a 'rocky' beach as opposed to a 'sandy' beach? Do you think that spending time at a rocky beach is a very different experience to a sandy beach?
- 3 Do you think you will ever be charged money to spend time at the beach in Australia? Why or why not? Explain your opinions.



## Il passato prossimo (The past tense)

As we know, verbs tell us about actions that take place. Another feature of a verb is that it carries 'tense'; that is, it tells us *when* actions occur—in the present, in the past, or in the future. So far you have learnt how to express verbs in the present tense.

**(io) mangio** I eat/I am eating

**(tu) giochi a calcio** you play soccer/you are playing soccer

Let's have a look at another very important tense—the past tense. The past tense or 'the present perfect' as it is known in English grammar terminology, is used to talk about what someone did, or has done, in the past. In Italian, this tense is referred to as **il passato prossimo**.

Jessica and Stephen used **il passato prossimo** several times in the cartoon story, such as:

**sono andato** I went

**siamo arrivati** we arrived

The first thing you will notice from the examples above is that there are two verbs together. Both verbs have different purposes and we need to include both to form **il passato prossimo**.

## The auxiliary verb essere

**Essere** has the role of an 'auxiliary verb' in the past tense; it is like a 'helper verb'. The form of **essere** tells us *who* has performed the action (i.e. who the *subject* of the verb is).

**Esempi sono andato** **sono** is the **io** form of **essere**, therefore 'I went'

**siamo arrivati** **siamo** is the **noi** form of **essere**, therefore 'we arrived'

Oggi vado a scuola  
e ieri sono andato  
a scuola!



## Attività 7.2

Identify the correct subject pronoun according to who is performing the action. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** sei arrivato    **a** lui    **b** tu    **c** io

**1** sono caduta    **a** io    **b** noi    **c** lei

**2** sei tornata    **a** lei    **b** io    **c** tu

**3** siamo stati    **a** noi    **b** voi    **c** loro

**4** è riuscito    **a** tu    **b** lui    **c** io

**5** siete andati    **a** loro    **b** noi    **c** voi



## Formation of the past participle

We have established that we can work out *who* is performing the action by looking at **essere**, but how do we figure out *what* the action is? The second verb in constructing **il passato prossimo** is known as 'the past participle' (**il participio passato**) and it tells us exactly what the action was.

**Esempi** **sono andato** I went (from **andare**—to go)  
**siamo arrivati** we arrived (from **arrivare**—to arrive)

To form the past participle, consider which type of verb you are dealing with. Is it a verb ending in **-are**, **-ere** or **-ire**? Then apply the following rules:

- are** → **-ato**      **Esempio** **andare** → **andato** (went)
- ere** → **-uto**      **Esempio** **cadere** → **caduto** (fell)
- ire** → **-ito**      **Esempio** **uscire** → **uscito** (went out)

### Handy hint

Notice that the subject pronouns (**io, tu, lui** etc.) are in brackets in front of the conjugated verbs? Just like when forming the present tense, the verbs tell us everything we need to know, so the subject pronouns are optional.

|          | -ARE verbs           |           | -ERE verbs           |           | -IRE verbs           |               |
|----------|----------------------|-----------|----------------------|-----------|----------------------|---------------|
|          | andare               | to go     | cadere               | to fall   | uscire               | to go out     |
| singular | (io) sono andato/a   | I went    | (io) sono caduto/a   | I fell    | (io) sono uscito/a   | I went out    |
|          | (tu) sei andato/a    | you went  | (tu) sei caduto/a    | you fell  | (tu) sei uscito/a    | you went out  |
|          | (lui) è andato       | he went   | (lui) è caduto       | he fell   | (lui) è uscito       | he went out   |
|          | (lei) è andata       | she went  | (lei) è caduta       | she fell  | (lei) è uscita       | she went out  |
| plural   | (noi) siamo andati/e | we went   | (noi) siamo caduti/e | we fell   | (noi) siamo usciti/e | we went out   |
|          | (voi) siete andati/e | you went  | (voi) siete caduti/e | you fell  | (voi) siete usciti/e | you went out  |
|          | (loro) sono andati/e | they went | (loro) sono caduti/e | they fell | (loro) sono usciti/e | they went out |

### Attività 7.3



Listen to the sentences and, in your exercise book, write the past participles that you hear and what they mean in English.

**Esempio** **Caterina è andata a scuola.**

Answer: **andata** (went)

### Attività 7.4



Listen to the conversation and identify which forms of **il passato prossimo** you hear. One has been done for you as an example.

- sei stato       sono stato       sono stata       siamo partiti
- sono andato       sono andata       siamo arrivati       siamo andati



## Agreement of the past participle

Soon you'll be forming **il passato prossimo** in no time! There is one more important factor we need to consider. Look at the statements below made by Stephen and Jessica. What do you notice that is different about them?

Sono andato al liceo scientifico...



Sono andata in montagna...



### Handy hint

How would you form a past participle if the action was performed by a group of males and females? If just one male is present in the group, you have to use the masculine plural ending **-i**—even if there is only one male among fifty females!

The endings of the past participles are different according to who has done the action. Past participles are like adjectives in this way as they must agree in *gender* and *number* with the subject.

♂ If a male has performed the action, the ending will be **-o** (**andato**)

♀ If a female has performed the action, the ending will be **-a** (**andata**)

♂♂ If two or more males have performed the action, the ending will be **-i** (**andati**)

♀♀ If two or more females have performed the action, the ending will be **-e** (**andate**)



Nathan e le ragazze sono usciti ieri sera.

## Attività 7.5

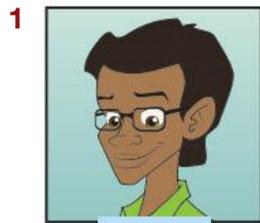
Write five sentences in your exercise book, joining words from each column, to create sentences in the past tense that agree in gender and number. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** Io sono andato a scuola.

|   |                   |      |        |               |
|---|-------------------|------|--------|---------------|
| 1 | Io (m)            | è    | andati | a scuola.     |
| 2 | Tu (f)            | sono | andata | in pizzeria.  |
| 3 | Caterina          | sono | andate | in palestra.  |
| 4 | Paolo             | sei  | andato | a Venezia.    |
| 5 | Stephen e Jessica | sono | andata | a Roma.       |
| 6 | Melanie e Nina    | è    | andato | in gelateria. |

## Attività 7.6

Identify who has performed the actions out of the four possibilities below by looking at the ending of the past participles in each sentence. Write your answers in your exercise book.



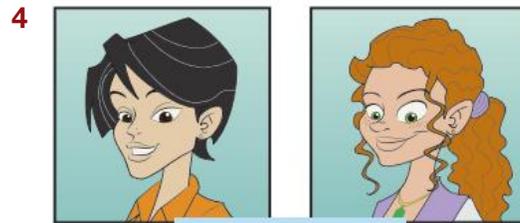
Nathan



Stephen e Alessandro



Nina



Melanie e Jessica

**Esempio** Stephen e Alessandro sono andati al mare a Rimini.

- a \_\_\_\_\_ è arrivata alle otto di mattina.  
 b \_\_\_\_\_ è riuscito a sciare.  
 c \_\_\_\_\_ sono stati in montagna per una settimana.  
 d \_\_\_\_\_ sono uscite di sera.  
 e \_\_\_\_\_ è andata in Francia per le vacanze.

## Attività 7.7

Read the postcard and identify all the verbs written in **il passato prossimo**. Write your answers in your exercise book.

Cara Stefania,  
 come stai? Io sto benissimo! Quanto mi piace l'estate! Quest'anno sono andata a Riccione con la mia famiglia. È stato molto divertente! Siamo rimasti in un albergo vicino al mare per due settimane. Ogni giorno sono andata in spiaggia e di sera sono uscita in discoteca o a mangiare con la famiglia. Però ieri siamo partiti, e adesso sono tornata a studiare. E tu? Dove sei andata per le vacanze?

Bacioni,  
 Sienna



Stefania Piperno  
 Via Bontempi 45  
 55100 Pescara  
 ITALIA

### Handy hint

To make the negative of a past tense construction, simply put **non** in front of it, just as you would do for the present tense.

**Esempio**  
**Non sono andato in montagna.**

I didn't go to the mountains.

## Attività 7.8

Look at the list of things you were hoping to do today. Write five sentences in your exercise book, using **il passato prossimo**, stating whether you did or didn't complete the activities based on the tick or cross beside each item on the list. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** Non sono andato/a al Foro Romano.

### Cose da fare/posti da vedere

- andare al Foro Romano
- andare alla Fontana di Trevi
- entrare nella Basilica di San Pietro
- tornare al Colosseo
- uscire con la nonna
- arrivare in pizzeria alle nove

## Attività 7.9

For each photo, write a sentence in Italian indicating where the individual(s) listed beneath the image has/have gone using **andare** in **il passato prossimo**. There may be more than one way to interpret the photos. Write your answers in your exercise book.

### Esempio



Melanie

**Melanie è andata a Venezia.**

2



Paolo

4



Nathan e Akrim

1



Stephen

3



Nina e Alessandro

5



Jessica

## Attività 7.10



22

Listen to the audio and note in your exercise book whether **andare** is used in the present or past tense for each sentence.

**Esempio** Vado in palestra ogni giorno.

Answer: **vado** = present tense



## Il passato prossimo with essere

In reality, we don't always use **essere** as the auxiliary verb when forming **il passato prossimo**; we will look at another way to express the past tense in the next chapter.

Below is a list of sixteen verbs that use **essere** in **il passato prossimo**. Most of these verbs are related to movement like coming and going, entering and exiting, arriving and departing etc.

| Infinitive       |               | Past tense                   |                |
|------------------|---------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>andare</b>    | to go         | (io) <b>sono andato/a</b>    | I went         |
| <b>arrivare</b>  | to arrive     | (io) <b>sono arrivato/a</b>  | I arrived      |
| <b>cadere</b>    | to fall       | (io) <b>sono caduto/a</b>    | I fell         |
| <b>diventare</b> | to become     | (io) <b>sono diventato/a</b> | I became       |
| <b>entrare</b>   | to enter      | (io) <b>sono entrato/a</b>   | I entered      |
| <b>essere</b>    | to be         | (io) <b>sono stato/a*</b>    | I was          |
| <b>morire</b>    | to die        | (io) <b>sono morto/a*</b>    | I died         |
| <b>nascere</b>   | to be born    | (io) <b>sono nato/a*</b>     | I was born     |
| <b>partire</b>   | to leave      | (io) <b>sono partito/a</b>   | I left         |
| <b>rimanere</b>  | to remain     | (io) <b>sono rimasto/a*</b>  | I remained     |
| <b>salire</b>    | to go up      | (io) <b>sono salito/a</b>    | I went up      |
| <b>scendere</b>  | to go down    | (io) <b>sono sceso/a*</b>    | I went down    |
| <b>stare</b>     | to stay/to be | (io) <b>sono stato/a</b>     | I stayed/I was |
| <b>tornare</b>   | to return     | (io) <b>sono tornato/a</b>   | I returned     |
| <b>uscire</b>    | to go out     | (io) <b>sono uscito/a</b>    | I went out     |
| <b>venire</b>    | to come       | (io) <b>sono venuto/a</b>    | I came         |

### Handy hint

\* These past participles are irregular and don't follow the normal pattern of conjugation. We will examine irregular past participles more closely in the next chapter.

### Handy hint

To recall the verbs that require **essere** in **il passato prossimo**, you could visualise the happenings in a house. Picture a person arriving at the house (**arrivare**), another entering via the front door (**entrare**), someone exiting through the back door (**partire**) and another leaving to go to a party (**uscire**). You could continue using this visual aid to include all sixteen verbs that take **essere** with **il passato prossimo**.



le Dolomiti

## La geografia italiana

The geography of a country influences many aspects of the lives of its inhabitants including lifestyle, social practices, economic industries and cuisine.

We know that Italy is covered by two significant mountain ranges (**le Alpi** and **gli Appennini**) and boasts a long coastline. We also know that Italy is a great deal smaller than Australia. What else do you know about Italy's geographical features? This table summarises some of the main facts.



il Lago di Como

| La geografia d'Italia                                  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>i mari</b><br>(the seas)                            | il Mare Mediterraneo<br>Sud: il Mar Ionio<br>Est: il Mare Adriatico<br>Ovest: il Mar Tirreno, il Mar Ligure |
| <b>le montagne</b><br>(the mountains)                  | le Alpi (il Monte Bianco—4810 metri)<br>gli Appennini<br>le Dolomiti  |
| <b>i laghi principali</b><br>(the main lakes)          | il Lago di Como<br>il Lago di Garda<br>il Lago Maggiore   |
| <b>le isole principali</b><br>(the main islands)       | la Sicilia<br>la Sardegna   |
| <b>i fiumi principali</b><br>(the main rivers)         | il Po<br>l'Arno<br>il Tevere<br>l'Adige   |
| <b>i vulcani</b><br>(the volcanoes)                    | il Vesuvio<br>l'Etna  |
| <b>il numero di regioni</b><br>(the number of regions) | 20  |
| <b>la capitale</b><br>(the capital city)               | Roma  |

## Le regioni italiane

Not only are there obvious geographical divisions in Italy with islands and mountains separating landforms, but regional boundaries also exist to help govern the country—just as Australia is divided into states and territories. Each of Italy's twenty regions has a capital city, other main cities, and smaller towns and villages.

Each Italian region has something special and distinct to offer.



Some regions are known for their industries (as **Milano** in **Lombardia** is known for fashion) and other regions are renowned for their food produce (like **Sicilia** is famous for its sardines). Many regions also have incredible landscapes or natural wonders to display to the world (like **il Parco del Gran Paradiso** in **Piemonte**).

### Tocca a te!

Look at the map of Italy's regions on page x and use the phrase **Dov'è...?** (Where is + name of region?) to ask a classmate to locate different regions on the map. Your partner will reply **Ecco...** (Here is + name of region.) while pointing to the region on the map. Take turns to ask and respond.

### Investigazione Linguistica

#### Gli avverbi

**Avverbi** (adverbs) are words that modify a verb, an adjective or another adverb and can answer the question *how?*

**Esempi** How does Alessandro ski? Alessandro skis well.  
 How does Stephen eat? Stephen eats slowly.  
 How tall is Mt Etna? Mt Etna is very tall!

There are many different types of adverbs. In the cartoon story earlier in the chapter, Jessica used the adverb **costantemente** to describe how she fell to the ground while skiing.

In fact, you already use adverbs. In Chapter 5, you used the words **dritto** (straight) and **davanti** (in front of) as adverbs to describe how to get to places.

We can change adjectives into adverbs in English and Italian. To do this in English we often add the suffix *-ly*.

**Esempio** I am happy (adjective). I work happily (adverb).

To change adjectives into adverbs in Italian, we often add the suffix **-mente**. Depending on what type of adjective we are dealing with (what letter(s) it ends with), we usually have to change the adjective first.

### Cosa pensi?

Use an atlas or the Internet to compare Italy's geographical features with those of Australia. What is different and what is similar? Think about how geography impacts on lifestyle, social practices, economic industries and cuisine. Discuss this with your class.

Sono caduta per terra costantemente!





Stephen è andato via silenziosamente.

| Adjective type                                    | Steps to take to change to an adverb  | Example   |
|---|---|---|
| If the adjective ends in <b>-o</b> (masculine)    | Change the adjective to the feminine form ( <b>-a</b> ) and add <b>-mente</b> | tranquillo<br>↓<br>tranquilla<br>↓<br>tranquill <b>amente</b> |
| If the adjective ends in <b>-le</b> or <b>-re</b> | Drop the final <b>-e</b> and add <b>-mente</b>                                | facile<br>↓<br>facil_<br>↓<br>facil <b>mente</b>              |
| If the adjective ends in <b>-e</b>                | Simply add <b>-mente</b>  | paziente<br>↓<br>pazient <b>emente</b>                        |

It is important to note that in Italian, adverbs are usually placed *after* the verb.

**Esempi** Jessica è caduta **costantemente**.  
Jessica fell constantly.

**Melanie è arrivata velocemente**.  
Melanie arrived quickly.

## Attività 7.11



Listen to the audio and match the activity each person is doing (in the left column) with how they are performed (in the right column). One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** Caterina studia l'inglese

lentamente.

**1** Alessandro parla italiano

felicemente.

**2** Sono caduto

attentamente.

**3** Stephen mangia

pazientemente.

**4** Sei andata al cinema

facilmente.

**5** Mia madre mi ascolta

recentemente.

**6** Nathan e Stephen giocano a calcio

rapidamente.



## Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs can also be used to answer the questions *when?* or *how often?* We can use adverbs of frequency to explain how often we do different activities.

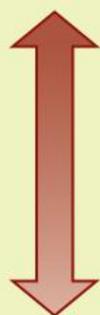
**Esempi** **Vado in montagna raramente.**

I rarely go to the mountains.

**Gioco a tennis regolarmente.**

I play tennis regularly.

Not all adverbs of frequency end with **-mente**. Here are some examples.



### Most frequently

**sempre** always

**spesso** often

**qualche volta** sometimes

**non... mai** never

### Least frequently

Adverbs are invariable, which means they don't change form at all and like the adverbs we used previously, adverbs of frequency are usually placed *after* the verb in Italian.

### Esempi

**Bevi sempre il caffè?** Do you always drink coffee?

**Mangio spesso i cornetti.** I often eat croissants.

**Gioco qualche volta a pallacanestro.** I sometimes play basketball.

**Non vado mai in montagna.** I never go to the mountains.

Vanno spesso a sciare d'inverno.



### Handy hint

Although adverbs of frequency are usually placed after the verb in Italian, this is not always the case in English. For example, in English you can't say: 'I eat often croissants.' You have to place the adverb of frequency *before* the verb 'eat'.

## Attività 7.12

Write complete Italian sentences in your exercise book indicating how frequently you do each of the activities listed below, using adverbs of frequency (i.e. **sempre**, **spesso**, **qualche volta**, **non... mai** etc.).

**Esempio** giocare a pallacanestro → **Gioco spesso a pallacanestro.**

1 leggere libri

4 studiare la matematica

2 preparare la cena

5 suonare uno strumento

3 andare al mare

6 andare al cinema



## Italian dialects

Did you know that Italian is called a 'Romance language'? This doesn't mean that it is a romantic language (although many people think it has a romantic sound to it!). The 'Romance languages' are those that originate from Latin. Other Romance languages are French, Portuguese, Romanian and Spanish. The English language also adopted many words from Latin and this is why there are similarities between Italian and English words.

Many Italian **dialetti** (dialects) also stem from Latin. A dialect is a variation of a standard language. It can be different in the words that it uses, the grammar rules it applies and the pronunciation of words. Dialects can vary significantly from one region to the next and can result in Italians from different regions finding it hard to understand each other!

Why do all of these dialects exist? The answer to that question lies in Italian history. Latin was the official language of Rome in the time of the Roman Empire. When the Roman Empire fell in 476 CE, Italy came under the rule of many different countries. The country was divided into separate city states and each region was greatly impacted upon by the various invaders who occupied the land. Language evolved under the influence of the foreign conquerors and each region developed its own dialect.

When the unification of Italy occurred in 1861, it was decided that a unified country needed a common language. The Tuscan dialect was chosen because **Firenze** was such an important city from a cultural point of view during that time. And so the standard 'Italian' language was born!

In modern Italy, dialects are still spoken, more frequently by older Italians than young people and they are stronger in some regions than others. The influence of radio and television and an increase in travelling between regions has meant that standard Italian is generally spoken among the population. However, dialects still have a place in Italian society and contribute to a sense of regional pride among Italians.

### Cosa pensi ?

Do you know of any regional language differences that exist in Australia? Are there any words, phrases or expressions that are used in particular states or territories? For example, a corner store that sells basic groceries and household items is known as a 'milk bar' in Victoria and New South Wales, but is generally referred to as a 'deli' in Western Australia and South Australia. Can you think of any other examples like this?

Parli italiano?



Sì, ma parlo anche il mio dialetto, il calabrese!

# Ripasso

- 1 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.
- a Serena went to the movies last night.
  - b We left the hotel this morning.
  - c I entered St Mark's Basilica in Venice.
  - d Sonia and Zoe went out last night.
  - e Nathaniel and I managed to ski in the mountains.

- 3 Imagine that you have just spent the day in Rome. Write a diary entry saying where you went (include at least five places) using **andare in il passato prossimo**.

Caro diario,  
oggi è stato un giorno favoloso!  
Sono andato/a al Colosseo...



- 2 Change these adjectives into adverbs. Write your answers in your exercise book. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** certo → **certamente**

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| a particolare | e rapido       |
| b felice      | f intelligente |
| c timido      | g chiaro       |
| d sincero     | h possibile    |

- 4 Change the sentences below from the present tense into **il passato prossimo** by modifying the verbs that have been underlined. The gender, where appropriate, has also been indicated in brackets. Write your answers in your exercise book.

**Esempio** Vado al cinema con Roberto. (m)  
**Sono andato al cinema con Roberto.**

- a Arrivo a Roma alle dieci di mattina. (f)
- b Vai in montagna a sciare? (m)
- c A che ora tornate a casa? (f)
- d Partiamo presto per Venezia. (m)
- e Alessandro entra nel museo.
- f Melinda cade per terra regolarmente.
- g Le nonne arrivano presto.
- h I ragazzi sono a scuola.

- 5 Use the legend and the pictures of dice to figure out how frequently the activities listed are performed by the people in brackets. Write complete Italian sentences in your exercise book for each activity. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** andare al mare (io)

**Vado qualche volta al mare.**

a fare i compiti (Luca)

c mangiare la pasta (loro)

b lavorare in giardino (tu)

d andare in treno (Bruno e Luigi)

## Legend



sempre

spesso



qualche volta

non... mai



# Riassunto

Now you can:

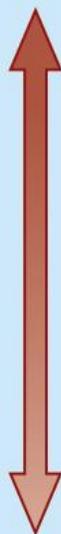
talk about past events and experiences using the past tense (**il passato prossimo**)

|          | -ARE verbs           |           | -ERE verbs           |           | -IRE verbs           |               |
|----------|----------------------|-----------|----------------------|-----------|----------------------|---------------|
|          | andare               | to go     | cadere               | to fall   | uscire               | to go out     |
| singular | (io) sono andato/a   | I went    | (io) sono caduto/a   | I fell    | (io) sono uscito/a   | I went out    |
|          | (tu) sei andato/a    | you went  | (tu) sei caduto/a    | you fell  | (tu) sei uscito/a    | you went out  |
|          | (lui) è andato       | he went   | (lui) è caduto       | he fell   | (lui) è uscito       | he went out   |
|          | (lei) è andata       | she went  | (lei) è caduta       | she fell  | (lei) è uscita       | she went out  |
| plural   | (noi) siamo andati/e | we went   | (noi) siamo caduti/e | we fell   | (noi) siamo usciti/e | we went out   |
|          | (voi) siete andati/e | you went  | (voi) siete caduti/e | you fell  | (voi) siete usciti/e | you went out  |
|          | (loro) sono andati/e | they went | (loro) sono caduti/e | they fell | (loro) sono usciti/e | they went out |

use **essere** with certain verbs to form **il passato prossimo**

| Infinitive |               | Past tense            |                |
|------------|---------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| andare     | to go         | (io) sono andato/a    | I went         |
| arrivare   | to arrive     | (io) sono arrivato/a  | I arrived      |
| cadere     | to fall       | (io) sono caduto/a    | I fell         |
| diventare  | to become     | (io) sono diventato/a | I became       |
| entrare    | to enter      | (io) sono entrato/a   | I entered      |
| essere     | to be         | (io) sono stato/a     | I was          |
| morire     | to die        | (io) sono morto/a     | I died         |
| nascere    | to be born    | (io) sono nato/a      | I was born     |
| partire    | to leave      | (io) sono partito/a   | I left         |
| rimanere   | to remain     | (io) sono rimasto/a   | I remained     |
| salire     | to go up      | (io) sono salito/a    | I went up      |
| scendere   | to go down    | (io) sono sceso/a     | I went down    |
| stare      | to stay/to be | (io) sono stato/a     | I stayed/I was |
| tornare    | to return     | (io) sono tornato/a   | I returned     |
| uscire     | to go out     | (io) sono uscito/a    | I went out     |
| venire     | to come       | (io) sono venuto/a    | I came         |

use adverbs of frequency to express how often you do activities



Most frequently

sempre always

spesso often

qualche volta sometimes

non... mai never

Least frequently

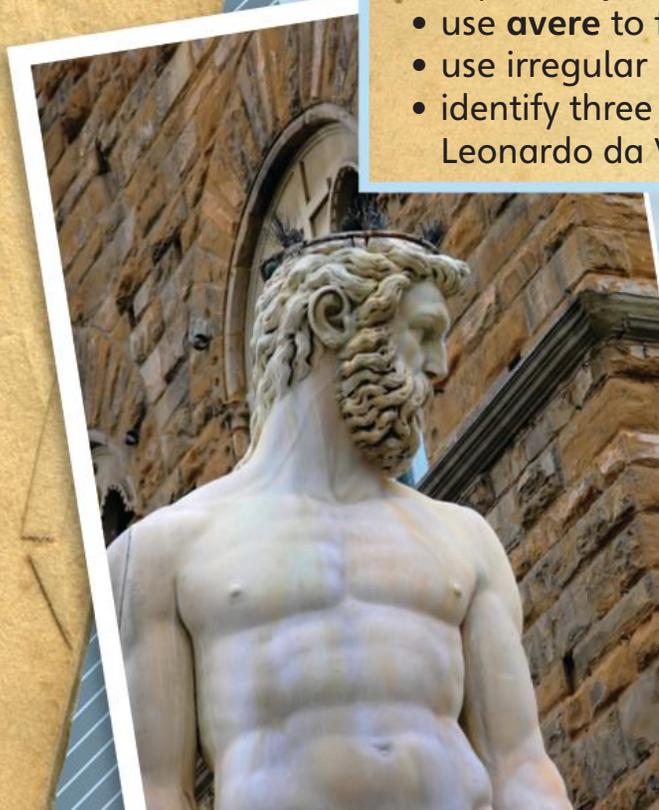
use adverbs to express how you do activities

| Adjective type                          | Steps to take to change to an adverb                          | Example         |
|---|---|-----------------|
| If the adjective ends in -o (masculine) | Change the adjective to the feminine form (-a) and add -mente | tranquillamente |
| If the adjective ends in -le or -re     | Drop the final -e and add -mente                              | facilmente      |
| If the adjective ends in -e             | Simply add -mente   | pazientemente   |

# Firenze: la città d'arte

## You will learn how to:

- recognise the significance of **Firenze** and the cultural revolution of the Renaissance
- express **il passato prossimo** with reflexive verbs
- use **avere** to form **il passato prossimo**
- use irregular past participles
- identify three important Italian personalities—  
Leonardo da Vinci, Dante Alighieri and Galileo Galilei.



# Un giorno a Firenze



Akrim and Melanie went on a day trip to explore the city of Firenze. Upon their return, Akrim caught up with Jessica to tell her all about his 'date' with Melanie!

**1** Perché sei così felice, Akrim?

La settimana scorsa Melanie mi ha telefonato e mi ha invitato a passare un giorno con lei a Firenze. Sono appena tornato... che giorno stupendo!

**2** Com'è andato l'appuntamento? Hai fatto bella figura?

Come no! Mi sono alzato prestissimo per non essere in ritardo, mi sono vestito in modo molto elegante e mi sono pettinato con grande cura.

Bene! E poi?

**3** Ci siamo incontrati sul famoso Ponte Vecchio, davanti alla prima gioielleria.

Che bello! Hai comprato qualcosa? Forse un regalo per Melanie o...?

**4** No! Le collane d'oro costano un occhio della testa!

Sono bellissime lo stesso! Non importa... allora, come avete passato il giorno?

**5** Siamo andati alla Galleria degli Uffizi e abbiamo visto *La nascita di Venere* e *La Primavera* di Botticelli. Siamo andati al Palazzo Vecchio e abbiamo visto la Loggia dei Lanzi nella Piazza della Signoria.

**6** Siamo andati anche all'Accademia e abbiamo visto la statua di David. A Melanie piace tanto l'arte. Io invece mi sono annoiato un po' dopo quattro o cinque ore!



Avete fatto un bel giro di Firenze.

Sì, ma la cosa più bella di tutte è che abbiamo mangiato in un ristorante fiorentino!

Ah sì, hai mangiato bene?

7

Ho mangiato una bistecca grandissima!  
Si chiama 'bistecca alla fiorentina'!



Mi sono divertito un sacco!  
Firenze è stata bellissima!  
Melanie è bellissima! La bistecca... buonissima! Mi sono innamorato!

8

Ma Akrim, ti sei innamorato di Melanie o della bistecca alla fiorentina?!?

**ABC Glossario**

**nomi**

- l'appuntamento** the date, the appointment
- le collane** the necklaces
- il ristorante** the restaurant
- la statua** the statue

**aggettivi**

- appena** just
- grandissimo/a/i/e** very big
- fiorentino/a** Florentine
- scorso/a** last, past

**avverbio**

- prestissimo/a/i/e** very early

**verbi**

- mi sono alzato** I got up (m) (from **alzarsi**—to get up)
- mi sono annoiato** I got bored (m) (from **annoarsi**—to get bored)



|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <b>hai comprato</b>        | you bought (from <b>comprare</b> —to buy)                                     |
| <b>mi sono divertito</b>   | I enjoyed myself ( <i>m</i> ) (from <b>divertirsi</b> —to enjoy oneself)      |
| <b>essere in ritardo</b>   | to be late  |
| <b>avete fatto</b>         | you (plural) did (from <b>fare</b> —to do)                                    |
| <b>ci siamo incontrati</b> | we met (from <b>incontrarsi</b> —to meet)                                     |
| <b>mi sono innamorato</b>  | I've fallen in love ( <i>m</i> ) (from <b>innamorarsi</b> —to fall in love)   |
| <b>ti sei innamorato</b>   | you've fallen in love ( <i>m</i> ) (from <b>innamorarsi</b> —to fall in love) |
| <b>ha invitato</b>         | he/she/it invited (from <b>invitare</b> —to invite)                           |
| <b>ho mangiato</b>         | I ate (from <b>mangiare</b> —to eat)  |
| <b>hai mangiato</b>        | you ate (from <b>mangiare</b> —to eat)  |
| <b>abbiamo mangiato</b>    | we ate (from <b>mangiare</b> —to eat)   |
| <b>passare</b>             | to spend time   |
| <b>avete passato</b>       | you (plural) spent time (from <b>passare</b> —to spend time)                  |
| <b>mi sono pettinato</b>   | I brushed my hair ( <i>m</i> ) (from <b>pettinarsi</b> —to brush one's hair)  |
| <b>mi ha telefonato</b>    | she telephoned me (from <b>telefonare</b> —to telephone)                      |
| <b>mi sono vestito</b>     | I got dressed ( <i>m</i> ) (from <b>vestirsi</b> —to get dressed)             |
| <b>abbiamo visto</b>       | we saw (from <b>vedere</b> —to see)   |

### altre espressioni e parole

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>com'è andato...</b>                     | how did it go ...   |
| <b>come no!</b>                            | of course!  |
| <b>con grande cura</b>                     | with great care   |
| <b>costano un occhio della testa d'oro</b> | they are really expensive (literally: 'they cost an eye') of gold |
| <b>hai fatto bella figura?</b>             | did you make a good impression?                                   |
| <b>in modo</b>                             | in a way  |
| <b>lo stesso</b>                           | the same  |
| <b>mi sono divertito un sacco</b>          | I enjoyed myself a lot  |
| <b>non importa</b>                         | never mind, it doesn't matter                                     |

## Attività 8.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- |          |  |          |          |
|----------|--|----------|----------|
| <b>1</b> | Melanie invited Akrim to spend a day with her in Florence. | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>2</b> | Akrim didn't really try to make a good impression.         | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>3</b> | Melanie and Akrim met at the Uffizi Gallery.               | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>4</b> | Akrim bought Melanie a gold necklace.                      | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>5</b> | <i>La nascita di Venere</i> is an artwork by Botticelli.   | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |
| <b>6</b> | Akrim ate a very small steak at the Florentine restaurant. | <b>V</b> | <b>F</b> |



# Firenze

**Firenze** (Florence) is located in the region of **Toscana** (Tuscany). It is one of the most frequently visited cities in Italy and is considered a great artistic centre. **Firenze** is situated on **l'Arno** (the Arno River) and all the city's major historic and artistic sights are within a short walking distance from each other.

An easily recognisable attraction is **Santa Maria del Fiore**—a cathedral crowned by the amazing dome created by artist and architect Filippo Brunelleschi over 600 years ago. Brunelleschi's dome was an extraordinary engineering feat and is still the largest ever constructed using bricks and mortar.

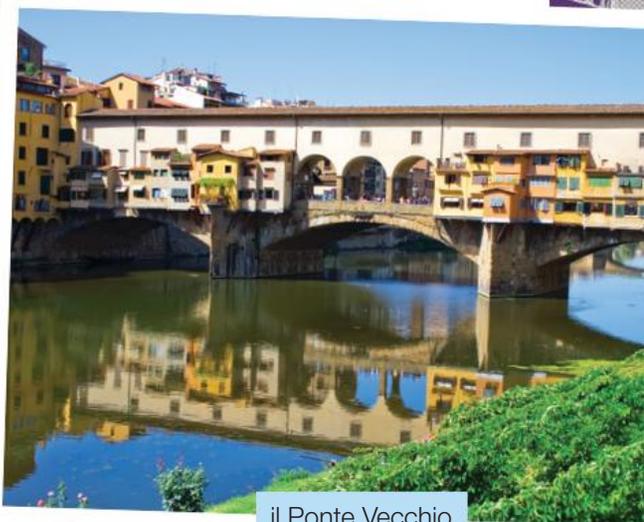
**Firenze** was severely damaged during the Second World War, yet **il Ponte Vecchio** (the 'Old' Bridge) was the only bridge that was not destroyed. This popular tourist attraction is a great place to buy jewellery as it is lined with many **gioiellerie** (jewellery shops). Initially, butchers used to run their businesses on **il ponte**. However, in the sixteenth century, a ruling Florentine family decided to replace the butchers with jewellery stores to get rid of the unpleasant smell of meat!

Another Florentine tourist experience, that vegetarians or those with small appetites should avoid, is to try **la bistecca alla fiorentina**, a massive piece of quality steak, usually shared between two people and cooked rare.

**Firenze** has been home to many great artists, writers and intellectuals. It is estimated that approximately 60 per cent of the most important art pieces in the world are found in Italy, and that close to half of these works are in **Firenze**.



il duomo di Santa Maria del Fiore



il Ponte Vecchio



Hai lo stomaco per mangiare una bistecca alla fiorentina?



Una gioielleria sul Ponte Vecchio

## Attività 8.2

Unscramble these Italian words and phrases that relate to **Firenze** and write an English translation and brief summary in your exercise book about each term. Take note, the definite articles have been included to make it extra challenging.

- 1 noltasaca
- 2 Inora
- 3 civelptecionoh
- 4 Icroaseaaltifafienintabc
- 5 oleriegjielel



### Cosa pensi ?

Is the idea of **fare bella/brutta figura** something that is purely Italian? Is there anything like it in Australia?



### Investigazione Culturale

## Fare bella/brutta figura

Italians are known to be a style-conscious population and with this characteristic comes a certain level of self-confidence.

**Fare bella figura** (to make a good impression) is an Italian concept that encompasses the idea of 'keeping up appearances'—being well presented and knowing how to behave appropriately. However, **fare bella figura** can't be so simply defined; it is as much about being well dressed as it is about having the right attitude. Essentially, **fare bella figura** is about presenting your very best to the world.

Something to be avoided is **fare brutta figura** (to make a bad impression). **Brutta** translates to 'ugly', and **fare brutta figura** is about showing a lack of sophistication and a lack of understanding. Saying something embarrassing is an example of **fare brutta figura**.



### Investigazione Linguistica

## Il passato prossimo with reflexive verbs

As you can tell from his description, Akrim took great care to prepare himself for his 'date' with Melanie:

**Mi sono alzato prestissimo per non essere in ritardo.**

**Mi sono vestito in modo molto elegante.**

**Mi sono pettinato con grande cura.**

Do you recognise parts of these statements? Perhaps you remember using reflexive verbs like **alzarsi**, **vestirsi** and



**pettinarsi** and the pronoun **mi** in Chapter 1 to talk about your daily routine. You may also identify from your learning in Chapter 7 that **alzato**, **vestito** and **pettinato** are 'past participles' and they are used when expressing a past action. **Sono** is a form of **essere** and when it is in front of a past participle it is a combination that forms **il passato prossimo**. In Akrim's statements, we are dealing with reflexive verbs in the past tense.

Reflexive verbs require us to follow the same procedure as we do for other verbs in the past tense. However, just as we do in the present tense, we must be sure to include the reflexive pronoun in front of the verb.

|          | <b>divertirsi</b>                 | <b>to enjoy oneself</b>        |
|----------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| singular | (io) <b>mi</b> sono divertito/a   | I enjoyed myself               |
|          | (tu) <b>ti</b> sei divertito/a    | you enjoyed yourself           |
|          | (lui/lei) <b>si</b> è divertito/a | he/she enjoyed himself/herself |
| plural   | (noi) <b>ci</b> siamo divertiti/e | we enjoyed ourselves           |
|          | (voi) <b>vi</b> siete divertiti/e | you enjoyed yourselves         |
|          | (loro) <b>si</b> sono divertiti/e | they enjoyed themselves        |

Here are some more reflexive verbs that you might use with **il passato prossimo**.

| Infinitive           |                    | Past tense                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>addormentarsi</b> | to fall asleep     | <b>mi sono addormentato/a</b> |
| <b>annoiarsi</b>     | to get bored       | <b>mi sono annoiato/a</b>     |
| <b>arrabbiarsi</b>   | to get angry       | <b>mi sono arrabbiato/a</b>   |
| <b>incontrarsi</b>   | to meet            | <b>mi sono incontrato/a</b>   |
| <b>innamorarsi</b>   | to fall in love    | <b>mi sono innamorato/a</b>   |
| <b>prepararsi</b>    | to prepare oneself | <b>mi sono preparato/a</b>    |
| <b>spogliarsi</b>    | to undress oneself | <b>mi sono spogliato/a</b>    |



### Handy hint

As you have already learnt, we can recognise reflexive verbs by their **-si** endings when they are written in the infinitive. We use reflexive verbs for actions that *reflect back* onto the subject (the person who is performing the action) e.g. **mi lavo** (I wash *myself*).

## Attività 8.3



Listen to the audio and write the five past tense constructions you hear in your exercise book. Note whether each is a reflexive or a non-reflexive verb.

**Esempio** **Mi sono addormentata velocemente.**

Answer: **mi sono addormentata** (reflexive)



## Il passato prossimo with avere

We now know that reflexive verbs use **essere** as the auxiliary verb when forming **il passato prossimo**. We also know that there are other verbs that take **essere** when constructing past participles (e.g. **andare** → **sono andato**).

There is one last category of past tense phrases to consider. In the cartoon story, Akrim and Jessica made the following statements in **il passato prossimo** when chatting about Akrim's trip to **Firenze** with Melanie.

Akrim:

...Melanie mi **ha telefonato** e mi **ha invitato** a passare un giorno con lei...

...**abbiamo mangiato** in un ristorante fiorentino!

Jessica:

**Hai fatto** bella figura?

**Hai comprato** qualcosa?

...come **avete passato** il giorno?

What do you notice about the past tense phrases highlighted in red? Think about all the past tense constructions we have put together so far. How do these differ?

If you noticed that the first part of the construction is made up of the verb **avere** rather than **essere**, then you have figured out the difference! When forming the past tense, **avere** is used much more frequently as an auxiliary verb than **essere**. Do you recall the suggestion to remember verbs that use **essere** in **il passato prossimo** on page 121? If you can remember those verbs then you can deduce that most other verbs will use **avere** to form **il passato prossimo**!

Let's look at forming **il passato prossimo** using **avere** as the auxiliary verb.

## The subject pronoun of the verb

The first step is to work out who is the subject of the verb—who is the person doing the action? This will tell us which form of **avere** to include as the auxiliary verb.

**Esempi**

**ho telefonato** → subject = **io** → verb = **ho** (I have)

**abbiamo incontrato** → subject = **noi** → verb = **abbiamo** (we have)

Ho pensato che devo usare 'avere' nel passato prossimo per questa frase!



### Handy hint

Remember that when forming **il passato prossimo** with a verb that requires **essere**, you have to make sure that the past participle agrees with the subject. This does not happen with an **avere** construction—gender and number agreement is not required.

**Esempi**

Melanie **è andata** a Firenze e **ha incontrato** Akrim.

Akrim **è andato** a Firenze e **ha incontrato** Melanie.



## The past participle

Next we look at the past participle to tell us what the action was. It is formed the same way as an **essere** construction. That is:

**-are** → **-ato**      **Esempio** **mangiare** → **mangiato** (ate)

**-ere** → **-uto**      **Esempio** **vendere** → **venduto** (sold)

**-ire** → **-ito**      **Esempio** **dormire** → **dormito** (slept)

And when forming **il passato prossimo** with a verb that requires **avere** ... that's all you have to do!



Melanie e Jessica **sono andate** in piazza e **hanno incontrato** Alessandro e Nathan.

|          | <b>-ARE verbs</b>             |               | <b>-ERE verbs</b>            |                | <b>-IRE verbs</b>            |                 |
|----------|-------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
|          | <b>mangiare</b>               | <b>to eat</b> | <b>vendere</b>               | <b>to sell</b> | <b>dormire</b>               | <b>to sleep</b> |
| singular | (io) ho <b>mangiato</b>       | I ate         | (io) ho <b>venduto</b>       | I sold         | (io) ho <b>dormito</b>       | I slept         |
|          | (tu) hai <b>mangiato</b>      | you ate       | (tu) hai <b>venduto</b>      | you sold       | (tu) hai <b>dormito</b>      | you slept       |
|          | (lui/lei) ha <b>mangiato</b>  | he/she/it ate | (lui/lei) ha <b>venduto</b>  | he/she/it sold | (lui/lei) ha <b>dormito</b>  | he/she/it slept |
| plural   | (noi) abbiamo <b>mangiato</b> | we ate        | (noi) abbiamo <b>venduto</b> | we sold        | (noi) abbiamo <b>dormito</b> | we slept        |
|          | (voi) avete <b>mangiato</b>   | you ate       | (voi) avete <b>venduto</b>   | you sold       | (voi) avete <b>dormito</b>   | you slept       |
|          | (loro) hanno <b>mangiato</b>  | they ate      | (loro) hanno <b>venduto</b>  | they sold      | (loro) hanno <b>dormito</b>  | they slept      |

### Attività 8.4

In your exercise book, write the past participles for these infinitives. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** parlare → **parlato**

1 incontrare

5 capire

2 dovere

6 volere

3 finire

7 ballare

4 cantare

8 preferire



## Il Rinascimento e i Medici



The Medici crest

**Il Rinascimento** (Renaissance) was a historic period of great importance for Italy and Europe. It took place roughly from the fourteenth century to the mid-sixteenth century. **Rinascimento** means 're-birth', as Europe was 'born again' with an explosion of creativity in artistic and intellectual endeavours. Politics, philosophy, literature, art, science and architecture were explored in new and exciting ways. It was a stimulating time of discovery!

**Firenze** became a city of considerable cultural and artistic importance during **il Rinascimento**. The Medici family is credited with being responsible for **Firenze's** reputation as one of the world's most wondrous artistic centres.

**I Medici** ruled **Firenze** from the fourteenth to the eighteenth century. Their family coat of arms is a golden background with a blue circle containing **il Giglio** (the symbol of **Firenze**) and five red circles, thought to represent coins and making reference to their banking background. The crest is found on many buildings in **Firenze** and is a constant reminder of their impact on the city.

**I Medici** became patrons of many Renaissance artists who were commissioned to decorate public and private buildings. It was **Lorenzo de' Medici** who took patronage of the arts to a whole new level. Lorenzo sponsored artists like Michelangelo, Botticelli, and Leonardo whose art lives on in museums and buildings throughout **Firenze** and Italy.

**Firenze's Piazza della Signoria** was the main civic square in the days of the Medici family. The **piazza** now houses a magnificent open-air sculpture gallery known as the **Loggia dei Lanzi**.

**Firenze** is also home to the **Palazzo Vecchio**, formally known as **Palazzo della Signoria**, which was a lodging for **la signoria** (the local government) during Renaissance times.

The **Palazzo Vecchio** was attached to **gli uffizi**—the offices where the government conducted their important daily business of ruling **Firenze**. Today this is known as **la Galleria degli Uffizi**, which houses several of the world's most beautiful artistic masterpieces.



This painting, known as the *School of Athens*, depicts many important Renaissance figures.



## Irregular past participles

As with most verb forms, there are some exceptions and irregularities. Examine this extract from a newspaper article about a special event at **la Galleria degli Uffizi** to see past tense structures with **essere** and **avere**, as well as some irregular verbs that don't follow the same pattern as regular verbs when forming past participles.

### Gli Uffizi celebrano Leonardo

Ieri la Galleria degli Uffizi ha aperto alle sette di mattina e ha chiuso alle otto di sera. L'orario è stato cambiato per una mostra che celebra la vita e i lavori di Leonardo da Vinci.

Una studentessa australiana, Melanie Chong, è venuta alla mostra e ha detto: 'Ho visto tanti capolavori! Ho imparato tanto sulla vita di Leonardo da Vinci. È stato molto interessante!'



## Cosa pensi ?

The Renaissance period was like a revolution of thought resulting in many important advances in intellectual and artistic fields. Art was of huge importance in the days of the Medici family as it showed cultural understanding, wealth and above all, greatness. If you were a ruler of a city state today, what revolution would you encourage? Which individuals in our modern society would you sponsor in their field of expertise?



## Glossario

### nomi

|                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| <b>i capolavori</b>   | the masterpieces |
| <b>i lavori</b>       | the works        |
| <b>la mostra</b>      | the display      |
| <b>la studentessa</b> | the student (f)  |
| <b>la vita</b>        | the life         |

### avverbio

|             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| <b>ieri</b> | yesterday |
|-------------|-----------|

### verbi

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>ha aperto</b>   | he/she/it opened (from <b>aprire</b> —to open)       |
| <b>celebrano</b>   | they celebrate (from <b>celebrare</b> —to celebrate) |
| <b>ha chiuso</b>   | he/she/it closed (from <b>chiudere</b> —to close)    |
| <b>ha detto</b>    | he/she/it said (from <b>dire</b> —to say/to tell)    |
| <b>ho imparato</b> | I learnt (from <b>imparare</b> —to learn)            |
| <b>ho visto</b>    | I saw (from <b>vedere</b> —to see)                   |

### altra espressione

|                                  |                          |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>l'orario è stato cambiato</b> | the schedule was changed |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|



The table below contains a list of several irregular past participles. Some verbs you will recognise, others will be new. Look at what they mean in English and their form of past tense. Note that some of these irregular verbs use **essere** as their auxiliary verb and others use **avere** (shaded in blue).

| Infinitive        |            | Past tense                 |                |
|-------------------|------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| <b>aprire</b>     | to open    | (io) <b>ho aperto</b>      | I opened       |
| <b>chiedere</b>   | to ask     | (io) <b>ho chiesto</b>     | I asked        |
| <b>chiudere</b>   | to close   | (io) <b>ho chiuso</b>      | I closed       |
| <b>decidere</b>   | to decide  | (io) <b>ho deciso</b>      | I decided      |
| <b>dire</b>       | to say     | (io) <b>ho detto</b>       | I said         |
| <b>fare</b>       | to do      | (io) <b>ho fatto</b>       | I did          |
| <b>leggere</b>    | to read    | (io) <b>ho letto</b>       | I read         |
| <b>mettere</b>    | to put     | (io) <b>ho messo</b>       | I put          |
| <b>perdere</b>    | to lose    | (io) <b>ho perso</b>       | I lost         |
| <b>prendere</b>   | to take    | (io) <b>ho preso</b>       | I took         |
| <b>rispondere</b> | to respond | (io) <b>ho risposto</b>    | I responded    |
| <b>scrivere</b>   | to write   | (io) <b>ho scritto</b>     | I wrote        |
| <b>vedere</b>     | to see     | (io) <b>ho visto</b>       | I saw          |
| <b>essere</b>     | to be      | (io) <b>sono stato/a</b>   | I was/I stayed |
| <b>nascere</b>    | to be born | (io) <b>sono nato/a</b>    | I was born     |
| <b>rimanere</b>   | to remain  | (io) <b>sono rimasto/a</b> | I remained     |
| <b>scendere</b>   | to go down | (io) <b>sono sceso/a</b>   | I went down    |



## Attività 8.5

Construct sentences using the information below by changing the verbs according to the subjects listed. Write your answers in your exercise book. One has been done for you as an example.

- Esempio** **dire** la verità:    **a** io                    **b** Stephen            **c** voi  
**a** Io **ho detto** la verità.  
**b** Stephen **ha detto** la verità.  
**c** Voi **avete detto** la verità.

- 1** **perdere** il treno:            **a** tu                    **b** Io e Antonio    **c** Laura e Paolo  
**2** **scrivere** un'email:        **a** i ragazzi        **b** Tu e Nathan    **c** tu  
**3** **vedere** la statua di David: **a** Akrim            **b** voi                    **c** io

## Attività 8.6

Use the phrases in the following grid to create a dialogue with a partner. You will need to choose phrases from the options in each row and column. Remember to listen to your partner's answers before choosing your responses.

|          |          |                  |       |
|----------|----------|------------------|-------|
| <b>A</b> | Dove sei | andato<br>andata | oggi? |
|----------|----------|------------------|-------|

|          |      |                  |                       |
|----------|------|------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>B</b> | Sono | andato<br>andata | a Firenze.<br>a Roma. |
|----------|------|------------------|-----------------------|

|          |           |                                   |
|----------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>A</b> | Hai visto | il Ponte Vecchio?<br>il Colosseo? |
|----------|-----------|-----------------------------------|

|          |                      |  |
|----------|----------------------|--|
| <b>B</b> | Sì, e ho visto anche | la Galleria degli Uffizi.<br>Piazza di Spagna. |
|----------|----------------------|--|

|          |  |  |  |
|----------|--|--|--|
| <b>A</b> | Fantastico! E poi, che cos'hai fatto di bello? |  |  |
|----------|--|--|--|

|          |                 |  |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| <b>B</b> | Ho mangiato una | bistecca alla fiorentina!<br>pizza buonissima! |
|----------|-----------------|--|

|          |                |                        |       |
|----------|----------------|------------------------|-------|
| <b>A</b> | Allora, ti sei | divertito<br>divertita | oggi? |
|----------|----------------|------------------------|-------|

|          |             |                        |           |
|----------|-------------|------------------------|-----------|
| <b>B</b> | Sì, mi sono | divertito<br>divertita | un sacco! |
|----------|-------------|------------------------|-----------|

## Attività 8.7

There are six past tense structures in the passage below containing both regular and irregular past participles. Identify the past tense phrases and write in your exercise book which are regular and which are irregular.

**Esempio** ho dipinto (irregular)

### *Chi sono?*

*Sono nato vicino a Vinci, nel 1452. Ho cominciato la mia carriera come artista all'età di quattordici anni. Ho lavorato con il grande artista Andrea del Verrocchio. Ho dipinto molti capolavori come **La Gioconda**. Ho disegnato e ho scritto le mie idee nei libretti che oggi sono famosi. Ho la barba lunga... chi sono?*



Did you figure out who the mystery person is? Read ahead to find out!



## Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519)



Leonardo da Vinci is known as a 'Renaissance man'—he was an accomplished painter, sculptor, artist, engineer, inventor, architect, writer, musician ... As you can gather from his impressive résumé, he had a great variety of talents!

Born near the town of Vinci, Leonardo moved to **Firenze** at the age of about fourteen to work as an apprentice to a well-known artist of the time, Andrea del Verrocchio. This was the beginning of a brilliant career, which included working for the Medici family and the King of France.

Leonardo created several famous works of art, such as the *Mona Lisa* (known in Italy as **La Gioconda**), *L'Ultima cena* (*The Last Supper*) and his sketch of the *Vitruvian Man*.

He recorded his thoughts and ideas in notebooks, approximately twenty of which have been located and contain extraordinary sketches of machines and inventions. Many of Leonardo's inventions and scientific ideas were so advanced that they were centuries ahead of their time. He sketched models of aircraft, including the prototype of a helicopter.

Leonardo da Vinci's influence on the artistic world also lived on beyond his years. His work was a great inspiration for the next generation of Italy's leading artists, including Michelangelo and Raphael.

### Cosa pensi ?

Did you notice anything particular about Leonardo da Vinci's name and where he was born? Had you heard of Leonardo da Vinci before? Can you think of any series of books or films that refer to his work?



### Tocca a te!

Make up five questions in Italian to ask a partner about Leonardo da Vinci. Take it in turns to ask each other your questions and keep a record of how many answers you and your partner get right!

**Esempi** 1 Quando è nato Leonardo da Vinci?

2 Come si chiama uno dei capolavori che Leonardo da Vinci ha dipinto?



## Dante Alighieri (1265–1321)

Dante Alighieri was a poet and is probably the most famous Italian writer ever known. You could say he is Italy's version of the great William Shakespeare! He lived in the thirteenth century, over 700 years ago, yet his work is still studied in universities worldwide and in many Italian high schools. He is admired by Italians and people all over the world.

Dante was born in **Firenze** and lived there in a time of significant political confusion. His involvement in the city state's political affairs eventually saw him banished from his beloved **Firenze** and he composed his most famous written work while in exile—**La Divina Commedia** (*The Divine Comedy*).

Dante's masterpiece was made up of three volumes that explored his imagined journey through **l'Inferno** (*Hell*), **il Purgatorio** (*Purgatory*) and **il Paradiso** (*Heaven*). In **La Divina Commedia**, Dante presents his vision of Florentine society; he discusses injustices and his concerns about the city that seemed obsessed with wealth and power.

Dante's guide throughout **il Paradiso** is Beatrice, a woman that Dante saw when he was only nine years of age, but who captivated him so much that she became his muse and the inspiration for much of his work. Sadly Beatrice was never destined to be his love. **Che romantico!**



### Handy hint

Have you noticed how Dante's last name is spelt with a double 'l' in the inscription on his statue? That was the way it was spelt at the time the statue was built.

## Attività 8.8

Read the statements below and identify whether they describe Leonardo da Vinci or Dante Alighieri. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 È nato nel 1452.                       | 5 Si è innamorato di Beatrice.              |
| 2 Ha scritto <i>La Divina Commedia</i> . | 6 Ha lavorato per la famiglia Medici.       |
| 3 È nato a Firenze.                      | 7 Ha dipinto <i>L'Ultima cena</i> .         |
| 4 È nato vicino a Vinci.                 | 8 Ha disegnato e scritto idee nei libretti. |

### Cosa pensi ?

Dante's journey in the underworld was inspired by events he lived and is considered to be his message for the society of the time. Do you think literature, in general, is influenced by society and life, or is it the other way around?

### Cosa pensi ?

Can you think of at least one other famous Italian couple whose love story is well known and has been widely documented throughout history?



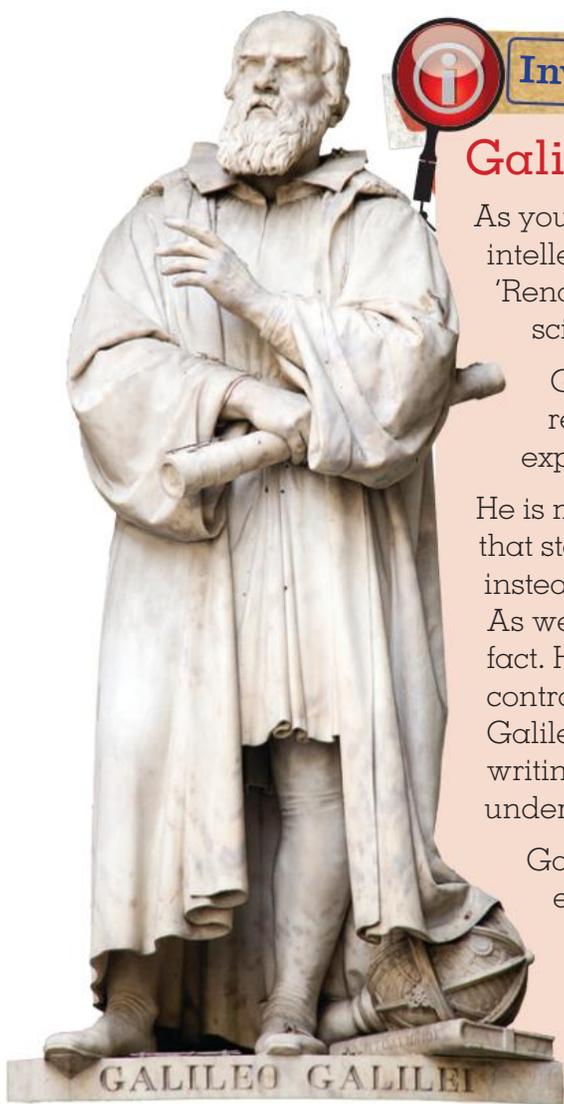
## Galileo Galilei (1564–1642)

As you have learnt, the Renaissance was a glorious era of intellectual discovery. Galileo Galilei was an important 'Renaissance man' who made enormous progress with scientific discoveries that were innovative for his time.

Galileo led a scientific revolution and he is frequently referred to as the father of modern mechanics and experimental physics.

He is most famous for his research into the Copernicus theory that stated the Sun does not revolve around the Earth, but instead the Earth and other planets revolve around the Sun. As we know today, this theory is considered to be a proven fact. However, in Galileo's day, this idea was considered very controversial as it contradicted the religious beliefs of the time. Galileo was ordered not to teach this idea, but as a result of his writing about the Copernicus theory, he was eventually placed under permanent house arrest and was banished from **Firenze**.

Galileo constructed the first telescope that was strong enough to view the surface of the Moon. He discovered the Moon is rough, not smooth, as was previously thought. As he created more powerful telescopes, he made other important astronomical observations, including the finding that Jupiter is surrounded by four large moons.



### Cosa pensi ?

Galileo's ideas and discoveries were highly contentious for the period of time he was living in, yet now they are celebrated as innovative and revolutionary. Why do you think people of the Renaissance era were so against his research? Would you say that contemporary society encourages or discourages this type of independent thinking? Try to think of examples to support your opinions.

### Attività 8.1



Galileo Galilei made many important discoveries in the fields of physics and mathematics. With a partner, research Galileo Galilei on the Internet and compile a list summarising his many achievements.



### Tocca a te!

Working with a partner, research another 'Renaissance man' not featured in this chapter, such as Michelangelo, Botticelli or someone of your choice, and create a Microsoft® PowerPoint® presentation to present to the class about their life and contribution to the Renaissance period.

# Ripasso

- 1 Listen to the audio of **il passato prossimo** phrases and choose the correct subject pronoun according to who is performing the action. One has been done for you as an example.



**Esempio** ho mangiato **a** tu **b** noi **c** io

- |   |        |       |        |
|---|--------|-------|--------|
| 1 | a io   | b lui | c tu   |
| 2 | a tu   | b noi | c voi  |
| 3 | a lui  | b lei | c tu   |
| 4 | a voi  | b noi | c loro |
| 5 | a loro | b voi | c noi  |

- 2 Listen to the audio of the sentences spoken in Italian. Identify the order of the sentences below as you hear them by writing the corresponding number in each box.



- I ragazzi hanno scritto delle email.
- Sono nata a Pisa.
- Carlo ha voluto mangiare la bistecca.
- Caterina ha detto che Firenze è bellissima.
- Jason e Felicity hanno fatto un bel giro.
- Alessandro ha preso un caffè al bar.

- 3 In your exercise book, convert these English past participles into Italian. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** spoke → parlato

- |        |              |             |          |
|--------|--------------|-------------|----------|
| a sold | c understood | e preferred | g wanted |
| b met  | d sang       | f finished  | h danced |

- 4 Complete the sentences by translating the past participles, as written in brackets, into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** Akrim (ate) ha mangiato una bistecca.

- a Io (understood) \_\_\_\_\_ la domanda.
- b Stephen e Nathan (spoke) \_\_\_\_\_ con Alessandro.
- c Melanie (danced) \_\_\_\_\_ alla festa.
- d Jessica (bought) \_\_\_\_\_ una giacca nuova.
- e Akrim e Melanie (met) \_\_\_\_\_ sul ponte.

- 5 Write five sentences in your exercise book, joining words from each column, to create sentences in the past tense that agree in gender and number. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** Jessica è caduta per terra.

- |                   |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| a Jessica         | ti sei alzata     | alle sei e mezza. |
| b Io e Nathan     | mi sono svegliato | per terra.        |
| c Tu              | è caduta          | a Firenze.        |
| d Tu e Jessica    | si sono divertiti | in spiaggia.      |
| e Akrim e Melanie | siete andati      | con le bici.      |
| f Io              | siamo usciti      | presto.           |

# Riassunto

Now you can:

express **il passato prossimo** with reflexive verbs

|          | <b>divertirsi</b>                 | <b>to enjoy oneself</b>        |
|----------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| singular | (io) <b>mi</b> sono divertito/a   | I enjoyed myself               |
|          | (tu) <b>ti</b> sei divertito/a    | you enjoyed yourself           |
|          | (lui/lei) <b>si</b> è divertito/a | he/she enjoyed himself/herself |
| plural   | (noi) <b>ci</b> siamo divertiti/e | we enjoyed ourselves           |
|          | (voi) <b>vi</b> siete divertiti/e | you enjoyed yourselves         |
|          | (loro) <b>si</b> sono divertiti/e | they enjoyed themselves        |

use **avere** to form **il passato prossimo**

|          | <b>-ARE verbs</b>      |               | <b>-ERE verbs</b>     |                | <b>-IRE verbs</b>     |                 |
|----------|------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
|          | <b>mangiare</b>        | <b>to eat</b> | <b>vendere</b>        | <b>to sell</b> | <b>dormire</b>        | <b>to sleep</b> |
| singular | (io) ho mangiato       | I ate         | (io) ho venduto       | I sold         | (io) ho dormito       | I slept         |
|          | (tu) hai mangiato      | you ate       | (tu) hai venduto      | you sold       | (tu) hai dormito      | you slept       |
|          | (lui/lei) ha mangiato  | he/she/it ate | (lui/lei) ha venduto  | he/she/it sold | (lui/lei) ha dormito  | he/she/it slept |
| plural   | (noi) abbiamo mangiato | we ate        | (noi) abbiamo venduto | we sold        | (noi) abbiamo dormito | we slept        |
|          | (voi) avete mangiato   | you ate       | (voi) avete venduto   | you sold       | (voi) avete dormito   | you slept       |
|          | (loro) hanno mangiato  | they ate      | (loro) hanno venduto  | they sold      | (loro) hanno dormito  | they slept      |

use **irregular past participles**

| Infinitive |            | Past tense                 |                |
|------------|------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| aprire     | to open    | (io) <b>ho aperto</b>      | I opened       |
| chiedere   | to ask     | (io) <b>ho chiesto</b>     | I asked        |
| chiudere   | to close   | (io) <b>ho chiuso</b>      | I closed       |
| decidere   | to decide  | (io) <b>ho deciso</b>      | I decided      |
| dire       | to say     | (io) <b>ho detto</b>       | I said         |
| fare       | to do      | (io) <b>ho fatto</b>       | I did          |
| leggere    | to read    | (io) <b>ho letto</b>       | I read         |
| mettere    | to put     | (io) <b>ho messo</b>       | I put          |
| perdere    | to lose    | (io) <b>ho perso</b>       | I lost         |
| prendere   | to take    | (io) <b>ho preso</b>       | I took         |
| rispondere | to respond | (io) <b>ho risposto</b>    | I responded    |
| scrivere   | to write   | (io) <b>ho scritto</b>     | I wrote        |
| vedere     | to see     | (io) <b>ho visto</b>       | I saw          |
| essere     | to be      | (io) <b>sono stato/a</b>   | I was/I stayed |
| nascere    | to be born | (io) <b>sono nato/a</b>    | I was born     |
| rimanere   | to remain  | (io) <b>sono rimasto/a</b> | I remained     |
| scendere   | to go down | (io) <b>sono sceso/a</b>   | I went down    |

# Cosa facevano gli antichi romani?

## You will learn how to:

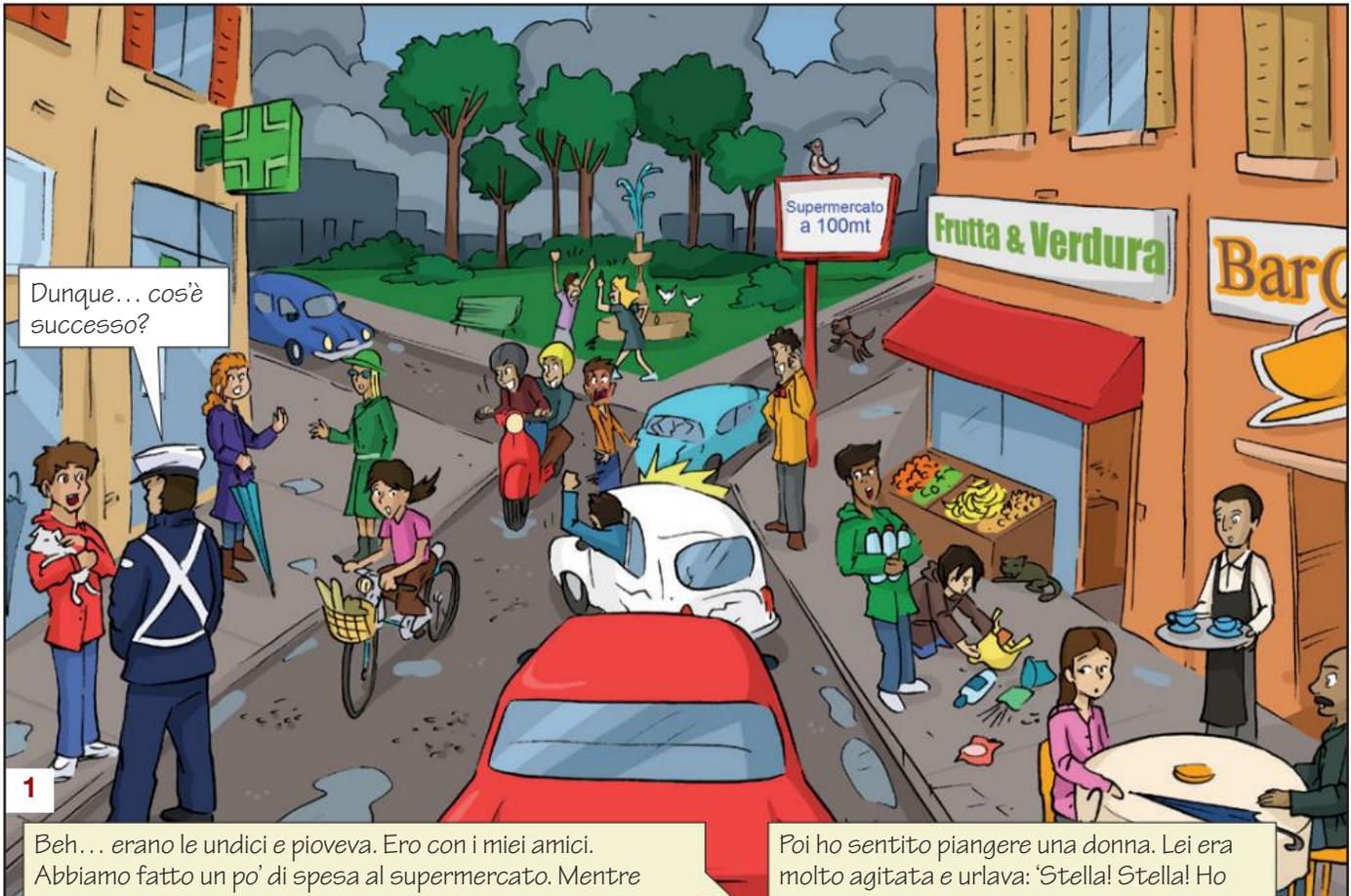
- form and use the imperfect tense (**l'imperfetto**) to describe the past
- talk about the past using **il passato prossimo** and **l'imperfetto**
- recognise key events in Italy's ancient history
- plan for an Italian-style party
- identify Italian food stores
- form diminutives with nouns to indicate size.



# Cos'è successo?



The Australian students are in **Roma**, for their final week in Italy. Before they return to Australia, they have decided to host a small farewell party. While the group is out doing some shopping for the party, they become involved in a bit of drama.



Dunque... cos'è successo?

1

Beh... erano le undici e pioveva. Ero con i miei amici. Abbiamo fatto un po' di spesa al supermercato. Mentre camminavamo lungo il corso ho sentito un cane. Il cane era in mezzo alla strada e abbaiva. C'era tantissimo traffico e non riusciva ad attraversare.

Poi ho sentito piangere una donna. Lei era molto agitata e urlava: 'Stella! Stella! Ho perso la mia bellissima Stella! Aiuto!' Ho capito subito che il cane era Stella. I miei amici mi hanno chiesto di salvare il cane.



2



3

Non sapevo cosa fare. Il traffico sembrava non finire mai, ma ho deciso di provare ad attraversare. Il cane continuava ad abbaiare... la donna piangeva... gli amici urlavano direzioni. C'era molta confusione!

Fortunatamente Stella era ferma e sono riuscito a prenderla e ad attraversare la strada.



Sì, sei stato molto fortunato, ma purtroppo le altre persone guardavano quello che facevi tu invece della strada e loro non sono stati così fortunati!

## ABC Glossario

### nomi

|                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| <b>il corso</b>     | the main street |
| <b>le direzioni</b> | the directions  |
| <b>la donna</b>     | the woman       |
| <b>le persone</b>   | the people      |
| <b>la spesa</b>     | the shopping    |
| <b>il traffico</b>  | the traffic     |

### aggettivi

|                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| <b>agitato/a</b>   | agitated  |
| <b>fermo/a</b>     | still     |
| <b>fortunato/a</b> | fortunate |

### avverbi

|                       |               |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| <b>fortunatamente</b> | fortunately   |
| <b>purtroppo</b>      | unfortunately |

### verbi

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| <b>abbaiare</b>     | to bark   |
| <b>abbaiava</b>     | he/she/it was barking (from <b>abbaiare</b> —to bark)     |
| <b>attraversare</b> | to cross (the road)                                       |
| <b>camminavamo</b>  | we were walking (from <b>camminare</b> —to walk)          |
| <b>continuava</b>   | he/she/it continued (from <b>continuare</b> —to continue) |
| <b>era</b>          | he/she/it was (from <b>essere</b> —to be)                 |



|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| <b>erano</b>      | it was/they were (from <b>essere</b> —to be)              |
| <b>ero</b>        | I was (from <b>essere</b> —to be)                         |
| <b>facevi</b>     | you were doing (from <b>fare</b> —to do)                  |
| <b>guardavano</b> | they were watching (from <b>guardare</b> —to watch)       |
| <b>piangere</b>   | to cry  |
| <b>piangeva</b>   | he/she/it was crying (from <b>piangere</b> —to cry)       |
| <b>pioveva</b>    | it was raining (from <b>piovere</b> —to rain)             |
| <b>provare</b>    | to try  |
| <b>riusciva</b>   | he/she/it managed to (from <b>riuscire</b> —to manage to) |
| <b>salvare</b>    | to save   |
| <b>sapevo</b>     | I knew (from <b>sapere</b> —to know [a fact])             |
| <b>sembrava</b>   | he/she/it seemed (from <b>sembrare</b> —to seem)          |
| <b>urlava</b>     | he/she/it was shouting (from <b>urlare</b> —to shout)     |
| <b>urlavano</b>   | they were shouting (from <b>urlare</b> —to shout)         |

### altre espressioni e parole

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <b>c'era</b>                   | there was  |
| <b>c'era molta confusione!</b> | it was chaos!  |
| <b>cos'è successo?</b>         | what happened?   |
| <b>dunque</b>                  | so, well (then)  |
| <b>in mezzo alla strada</b>    | in the middle of the road  |
| <b>lungo</b>                   | along  |
| <b>mentre</b>                  | while  |
| <b>prenderla</b>               | catch her (from <b>prendere</b> —to catch and <b>la</b> —direct object pronoun of 'her') |

## Attività 9.1

Look at the first frame of the cartoon story again. See if you can identify these people and objects and, with a partner, describe where they are located in English.

- 1 Stephen che parla con il vigile (policeman).
- 2 Due ragazzi su un motorino rosso.
- 3 Jessica che parla con una donna con un cappello verde.
- 4 Un gatto che dorme davanti al negozio di frutta e verdura.
- 5 Un uomo che parla al telefonino.
- 6 Un ombrello blu.
- 7 Due uccelli che fanno il bagno.
- 8 Un cameriere con due caffè.
- 9 Due donne che litigano (arguing).
- 10 Melanie che prende la spesa da terra.



## L'imperfetto

Did you notice that Stephen used **il passato prossimo** in his explanation of events in the cartoon story? He has also used another tense to express what happened. Look at the cartoon story again. Can you see any differences between **il passato prossimo** and this other tense?

The other tense is called **l'imperfetto** (the imperfect). You might have noticed that **l'imperfetto** has been used when Stephen talks about the weather, gives the time and explains what he and the others involved were doing while something else happened. This tense is used for *descriptive purposes*; in fact it is sometimes called the 'past descriptive'!

If you are talking about the past and are describing someone or something, talking about feelings, the weather and the time, then you have to use **l'imperfetto**. You will also use this tense when talking about what 'used to' happen.

Forming **l'imperfetto** is quite straightforward. Look at the conjugation patterns in the table.



### Handy hint

The **-ire** verbs, know as **-isc** verbs, (e.g. **preferire, capire, finire, pulire**) do not carry the **-isc** in **l'imperfetto**. They follow the pattern of regular **-ire** verbs.

|          | -ARE verbs                |                        | -ERE verbs                 |                      | -IRE verbs                  |                     |
|----------|---------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
|          | parlare                   | to speak               | piangere                   | to cry               | preferire                   | to prefer           |
| singular | (io) parl <u>avo</u>      | I was speaking         | (io) piang <u>evo</u>      | I was crying         | (io) prefer <u>ivo</u>      | I preferred         |
|          | (tu) parl <u>avi</u>      | you were speaking      | (tu) piang <u>evi</u>      | you were crying      | (tu) prefer <u>ivi</u>      | you preferred       |
|          | (lui/lei) parl <u>ava</u> | he/she/it was speaking | (lui/lei) piang <u>eva</u> | he/she/it was crying | (lui/lei) prefer <u>iva</u> | he/she/it preferred |
| plural   | (noi) parl <u>avamo</u>   | we were speaking       | (noi) piang <u>evamo</u>   | we were crying       | (noi) prefer <u>ivamo</u>   | we preferred        |
|          | (voi) parl <u>avate</u>   | you were speaking      | (voi) piang <u>evate</u>   | you were crying      | (voi) prefer <u>ivate</u>   | you preferred       |
|          | (loro) parl <u>avano</u>  | they were speaking     | (loro) piang <u>evano</u>  | they were crying     | (loro) prefer <u>ivano</u>  | they preferred      |

You can see that each verb uses the endings **-vo, -vi, -va, -vamo, -vate, -vano** and that the same vowel as the verb in its infinitive (**-a, -e, -i**) is used in front of these endings.



Even though most verbs in **l'imperfetto** are regular, the **imperfetto** forms of some verbs, such as **essere**, **fare** and **dire**, are irregular. The irregular forms of commonly used verbs should be memorised.

|          | <b>essere</b> | <b>to be</b>  | <b>fare</b>      | <b>to do</b>  | <b>dire</b>      | <b>to say/to tell</b> |
|----------|---------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| singular | (io) ero      | I was         | (io) facevo      | I did         | (io) dicevo      | I said                |
|          | (tu) eri      | you were      | (tu) facevi      | you did       | (tu) dicevi      | you said              |
|          | (lui/lei) era | he/she/it was | (lui/lei) faceva | he/she/it did | (lui/lei) diceva | he/she/it said        |
| plural   | (noi) eravamo | we were       | (noi) facevamo   | we did        | (noi) dicevamo   | we said               |
|          | (voi) eravate | you were      | (voi) facevate   | you did       | (voi) dicevate   | you said              |
|          | (loro) erano  | they were     | (loro) facevano  | they did      | (loro) dicevano  | they said             |

### Handy hint

**Essere** is irregular but **avere** (to have) is regular in **l'imperfetto**.

### Attività 4.2



Listen to these sentences describing past actions and events. Identify the form of the imperfect verb that is used and write your answers in your exercise book.

**Esempio** Luigi veniva a scuola in macchina. **veniva** → **lui/lei** form

### Attività 4.3

Here are some examples of how the imperfect tense is used in English. Complete the Italian translations by writing the correct form of the verb(s) in **l'imperfetto**. Write your answers in your exercise book. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** We used to have two dogs.

**Avevamo** due cani.

1 I was talking on the mobile.

\_\_\_\_\_ **al telefonino.**

2 My friends were playing the guitar.

**I miei amici** \_\_\_\_\_ **la chitarra.**

3 You (plural) used to do judo when you (plural) were younger.

\_\_\_\_\_ **judo quando** \_\_\_\_\_ **più giovane.**

4 It was a very cold day and it was raining.

\_\_\_\_\_ **una giornata molto fredda e** \_\_\_\_\_.

5 Every Saturday we would (used to) play tennis.

**Ogni sabato** \_\_\_\_\_ **a tennis.**



## L'imperfetto versus il passato prossimo

When talking about the past you will usually need to use both **l'imperfetto** and **il passato prossimo**. These rules will help you decide when to use which tense.

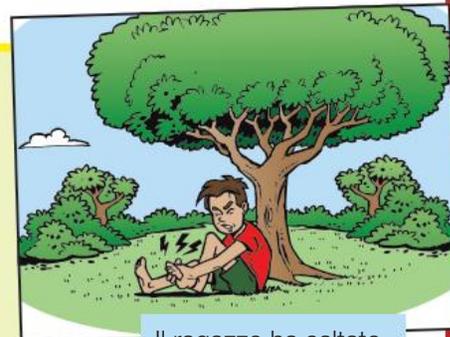
**L'imperfetto** is used when:

- talking about repeated/habitual actions in the past (what you used to do)
- referring to descriptions in the past
- describing physical and emotional feelings in the past
- talking about past actions that were taking place when something else happened.

**L'imperfetto** is often used to translate the English: 'person' + was/were + verb+ing. In English, this is called the 'continuous past'.

**Giorgio mangiava la pizza.** Giorgio was eating the pizza.

**I ragazzi saltavano sulla pedana elastica.**  
The children were jumping on the trampoline.



Il ragazzo ha saltato.



I ragazzi saltavano.

### Attività 4.4

Identify which parts of these sentences would be translated with **l'imperfetto** and which would take **il passato prossimo** in Italian. Careful, some sentences only require one past tense form. Once you have done this, translate the sentences into Italian in your exercise book, using the past tense structures you have identified.

**l'imperfetto**

**il passato prossimo**

**Esempio** I was watching television when my mother arrived home.

**Guardavo la televisione quando è arrivata a casa mia madre.**

- 1 I ate too much last night.
- 2 We used to live in Darwin.
- 3 Skye went to Rome last spring.
- 4 My best friend used to have red hair.
- 5 Yesterday it was snowing in Milan.
- 6 When Giovanni returned from Sydney he was very tired.
- 7 They were eating breakfast when Marisa rang.
- 8 While you were doing your homework, I was playing video games.

### Handy hint

The word **mentre** (while) usually indicates that the imperfect tense should be used.

# Un'intervista con Valeria Vettrinelli

Read the interview transcript of Italian television personality Valeria Vettrinelli talking to a journalist about the traffic incident in **Corso Cavour** involving Stephen and the Australian students.

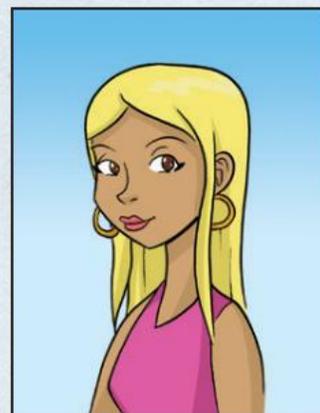


**Giornalista:** L'eroe di Corso Cavour è un giovane australiano! Ieri faceva brutto tempo a Roma e Stella, la protagonista canina del popolare teledramma *Un Veterinario in Famiglia*, ha avuto una piccola avventura. Con noi oggi c'è l'attrice romana Valeria Vettrinelli, padrona di Stella e anche la sua co-star nel teledramma. Valeria, cos'è successo?

**Valeria:** Eravamo in Corso Cavour. Non mi sentivo molto bene e così sono andata in farmacia. Di solito Stella è molto tranquilla e dolce quando usciamo, ma ieri c'era un temporale e lei era un po' agitata. Eravamo davanti alla farmacia, quando abbiamo sentito un grande rumore. Povera Stella, si è spaventata ed è scappata via. Era così veloce che non ho potuto prenderla.

**Giornalista:** Valeria, aveva molta paura?

**Valeria:** Sì, c'era molto traffico e Stella non è abituata al traffico. Sono rimasta tranquilla e ho chiesto aiuto a un gruppo di giovani. Quel giovane australiano è stato molto coraggioso. È andato subito in strada e ha salvato il mio tesoro.



Ero preoccupata, ma tutto è finito molto bene.

**Giornalista:** E Stella?

**Valeria:** Oggi sta bene. Ieri siamo andati subito da mio cugino; lui è veterinario.

**Giornalista:** Sei fortunata ad avere un veterinario in famiglia!

**Valeria:** Sì, siamo molto fortunati!

**nomi**

|                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>l'avventura</b>        | the adventure                  |
| <b>l'eroe</b>             | the hero                       |
| <b>il/la giornalista</b>  | the journalist                 |
| <b>la padrona</b>         | the owner                      |
| <b>il/la protagonista</b> | the protagonist, the lead role |
| <b>il rumore</b>          | the noise                      |
| <b>il teledramma</b>      | the television drama           |
| <b>il temporale</b>       | the thunderstorm               |
| <b>il veterinario</b>     | the veterinarian               |

**aggettivi**

|                     |        |
|---------------------|--------|
| <b>canino/a</b>     | canine |
| <b>coraggioso/a</b> | brave  |
| <b>dolce</b>        | sweet  |
| <b>povero/a</b>     | poor   |

**verbi**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>non è abituata</b>  | she is not accustomed to (from <b>abituare</b> —to accustom [to something]) |
| <b>si è spaventata</b> | she got frightened (from <b>spaventarsi</b> —to get frightened)             |

**altre espressioni e parole**

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <b>di solito</b>                 | usually  |
| <b>è scappata via</b>            | she ran away   |
| <b>non mi sentivo molto bene</b> | I wasn't feeling very well   |
| <b>tesoro</b>                    | (little) darling (literally: 'treasure', but often used as a term of endearment) |

**Attività 4.5**

Look at the interview again. How many uses of **l'imperfetto** can you find in the interview? How many uses of **il passato prossimo** are there?

**Attività 4.6**

Answer the following questions, in English, in your exercise book, based on the information in the interview with Valeria Vettrinelli.

- 1 What does the journalist say about Stephen in his opening comment?
- 2 Who is Valeria Vettrinelli and what is her relationship to Stella?
- 3 What does Valeria say about Stella's temperament?
- 4 According to Valeria, what might have influenced Stella's behaviour?
- 5 Why was Valeria frightened?
- 6 Why does Valeria mention her cousin?

**Attività 4.7**

As a class, discuss how Valeria's recollection of events differs from Stephen's account in the cartoon story at the start of the chapter.



**Handy hint**

In her interview, Valeria mentioned going to **la farmacia** (the pharmacy). Pharmacies in Italy usually only sell medicines. To buy make-up, perfumes and the giftware that we sometimes see in Australian pharmacies, Italians would be more likely to visit **la profumeria**.



### Italy's ancient past

History and the past is very much a part of everyday life for Italians. In most cities, modern architecture exists side by side with structures that are hundreds, and even thousands of years old.

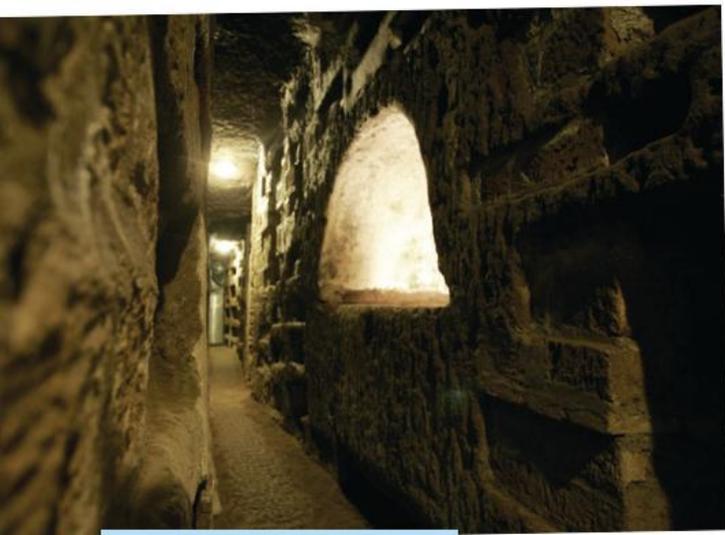
Nowhere is this more evident than in **Roma**, where many buildings from ancient times are still a feature of the city, even though they may be in ruins. Visitors to **Roma** can sit in the stands of **il Colosseo**, walk inside temples at **il Foro** (the Forum) and even see examples of Roman sewers and the catacombs (underground burial rooms and tunnels).

Tourist walking around the streets of **Roma** may also notice another reference to the city's ancient history—the letters SPQR. These are an acronym for the Latin phrase *Senatus Populusque Romanus* (Senate and People of Rome). The saying originally referred to the government of the ancient Roman Republic and was used as an official signature of the government. It is still the motto of **Roma** and can be seen on many buildings, fountains and even on rubbish bins and manhole covers in the city. SPQR is also part of **Roma's** coat of arms.

As one of the founding cities of Western civilisation, **Roma**, as a city, has a long and illustrious history, spanning more than 2500 years. **Roma** was the centre of the Roman Empire, which dominated for 400 years from the first century BCE till the fourth century CE, and at its peak spanned 6.5 million square kilometres across Europe, North Africa and the Middle East.



Rome's ancient motto on a manhole cover



Catacombs of ancient Rome

### Attività 4.8



Find out more about ancient Rome by researching the following topics:

- the legend of Romulus and Remus
- the assassination of Julius Caesar
- the rule of Emperor Augustus
- Roman catacombs.

Work in groups of four with each member choosing one topic to research and report back to the group. The timeline on page 157 is a good starting point for your research.

# A timeline of ancient Rome



## Cosa pensi ?

Consider the legacy of the Roman Empire. Do you know of any other empire that was as powerful at the height of its rule?

- 753 BCE** Building of the city of Rome begins. According to legend, Rome was founded by twin brothers Romulus and Remus. The city grew from existing villages and, according to archaeological evidence, the village of Rome probably dates back to the eighth century BCE.
- 509 BCE** Rome becomes a republic. The last of the seven kings of Rome is overthrown and a system of government based on annually elected magistrates and senators is introduced.
- 202 BCE** The power of Rome continues to grow and spread beyond Italy. The Romans become the dominant civilisation of the Mediterranean Sea.
- 146 BCE** By this time the Romans had conquered Greece and most of Spain.
- 44 BCE** Julius Caesar, one of Rome's most famous political leaders, is assassinated by senators who opposed Caesar's aim of absolute power and who wanted to restore constitutional government.
- 27 BCE** The Roman Empire is established, with Augustus as its first emperor, after the republican government collapsed. Emperors held the highest authority in the Empire, which meant that power was in the hands of one individual. This went against the Senate and People of Rome philosophy that was central to the Roman Republic.
- 96–180 CE** The Empire reaches its peak in relation to the territory that it controlled, its economic stability and cultural influence.
- 235–285 CE** This time was considered the worst period in Roman history. There was great political turmoil and fourteen Roman emperors were murdered in quick succession.
- 395 CE** The Roman Empire becomes divided into eastern and western halves ruled by two co-emperors.
- 455 CE** The Vandal warriors (a Germanic tribe) invade Italy from Africa and destroy Rome.
- 476 CE** The Roman Empire collapses completely and the last emperor, Romulus Augustulus, is overthrown. A German warrior, known as Odoacer, assumes power as the first barbarian king of Italy.



An image of the famous statue of Romulus and Remus who, according to legend, were nursed by a she-wolf.



Julius Caesar



### Roman inventions

Ancient Romans were not only an impressive society because of the power and size of their empire when it was thriving; they were also admired for what they invented and popularised.

#### Did you know?

- Concrete was invented by the Romans.
- Public baths and saunas were popular places of gathering for the Romans.
- Romans discovered the benefits of central heating, which was used to heat the floors and walls of bath houses.
- The Romans were responsible for constructing the best drains in the world. Underground drains were used to remove dirty water and sewage. To help keep the drains clean, they were flushed out with water from the baths.
- Calendars, similar to those we use today, originated in ancient Rome in 45 BCE. Julius Caesar organised the calendar so that each month was named after an important person or a god. For example, the month of March comes from the Latin word *Martius*, a time when Romans celebrated Mars (the god of war). Where do you think the name for July comes from?

#### Cosa pensi ?

What do you think about ancient Rome's achievements? How important do you think their inventions were at the time and what have they influenced today?



Ruins of ancient Roman baths

### Attività 9.9



What other objects and systems still used in modern society can we trace back to the Romans? Do some research on the Internet and at your library to find out more about ancient Roman inventions. Write a summary in your exercise book based on your findings. Here are some possible topics to get your started:

- amphitheatres
- aqueducts
- Roman numerals.

# Cosa hai comprato?

What did you buy?

Nina and the Australian students are getting together for **una spaghattata** (a late night spaghetti feast). While Nathan is out buying ingredients for the meal, Nina calls to check up on him. Read the transcript of their telephone conversation below.



Pronto!



Nathan! Sono Nina. Senti, hai fatto la spesa?



Sì, sono andato al supermercato in Corso Cavour.



Che cosa hai comprato? Hai preso la pasta?



Sì, ho preso tre pacchetti e anche tre barattoli di sugo.



E da bere? Hai comprato qualcosa?



Sì, ho comprato quattro bottiglie d'acqua, due bottiglie di tè freddo e anche sei bottiglie di succo di frutta.



Sei bottiglie!



Sì, a Stephen piace il succo di frutta.



Va bene... Vado in pasticceria e prendo una torta.



Non c'è bisogno, ho comprato del gelato.



La prendo lo stesso!

ABC

## Glossario

### nomi

**i barattoli** the jars  
**le bottiglie** the bottles  
**i pacchetti** the packets

**il sugo** the sauce (pasta sauce)  
**il succo di frutta** the fruit juice  
**la torta** the cake

### altre espressioni e parole

**la prendo lo stesso!**  
**non c'è bisogno** I'll get it (**la torta**) anyway!  
there's no need



## Attività 9.10

Use the shopping catalogue page above to calculate how much Nathan spent on the food and drink for **la spaghetтата**. Here is a list of the items (and quantities) that he purchased. Write your calculations in your exercise book.

- sei bottiglie di succo di frutta
- tre pacchetti di pasta
- quattro bottiglie d'acqua minerale
- due bottiglie di tè freddo
- tre barattoli di sugo
- quattro pacchetti di gelato



### Tocca a te!

With a partner, take turns to ask for and give the price of items in the catalogue page above in Italian. Vary your questions by asking how much a specific quantity of an item costs. The person who is responding will have to calculate the price based on the number of items requested.

**Esempio A:** Quanto costano due bottiglie di tè freddo?

**B:** Costano €2,00.



## Facciamo la spesa!

The Australian students had been shopping at **il supermercato** for their farewell party when they became involved in **l'avventura di Stella**.

Food shopping in Italy is a special experience. In most cities and towns, there are many specialty **negozi d'alimentari** (food stores) that sell fresh produce and offer customers their knowledge and expertise. **I supermercati** are becoming more common in Italy and are sometimes favoured for food shopping because of their competitive prices, variety of produce and convenience.

Despite the growth of supermarket shopping, some Italians still prefer to buy their food every day or every other day at the local specialist store or at **il mercato** (the market), which is usually held at least once a week in most centres. The markets sell a large variety of fresh food along with general household goods.

The reasons why many Italians shop so frequently could be because there is not sufficient storage space in the small apartments they live in, or more probably because they want to ensure that what they buy is at its freshest.

## Cosa pensi ?

How is food shopping in Australia similar or different to food shopping in Italy? What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of shopping at a supermarket or at markets and/or specialty food stores?



la salumeria

# I negozi d'alimentari



## The food stores

Big cities and most residential areas in Italy will have the basic food necessities within walking distance at these food stores.

- il fruttivendolo                      the greengrocer (fruit and vegetables)
- la macelleria                        the butcher
- il negozio di (generi)              the general store
- alimentari
- il panificio                            the bakery
- la pescheria                         the fishmonger
- la rosticceria                        the take-away shop  
(literally: 'roasted meats store')
- la salumeria                         the delicatessen (cold meats, cheeses etc.)



Ortofrutta (fruit and vegetables) al mercato



## Diminutives

Sometimes in English if we want to give the idea that something is cute or small we may add *-let* and *-ie/y* to the end of the noun (e.g. dog—doggie; pig—piglet, piggy; bird—birdie). The technical word for this is forming a 'diminutive'.

Using diminutive forms is common in Italian. As in English, they are usually formed by adding a suffix to the end of the noun. The final vowel of the noun is dropped before adding the diminutive suffix. In the feminine form the *-o* changes to *-a*.

| Suffix       | Noun               | Diminutive form      | Meaning                    |
|--------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>-ino</b>  | <b>il telefono</b> | <b>il telefonino</b> | the little phone/mobile    |
| <b>-ina</b>  | <b>la ragazza</b>  | <b>la ragazzina</b>  | the little girl/young girl |
| <b>-etto</b> | <b>il pacco</b>    | <b>il pacchetto</b>  | the little packet          |
| <b>-etta</b> | <b>la piazza</b>   | <b>la piazzetta</b>  | the little town square     |

Sometimes more than one diminutive suffix can be added. Look at this example:



**il sacco** (the bag)



**il sacchetto**  
(the little bag)



**il sacchettino**  
(the very little bag)

## Attività 9.11

Add the correct suffix (from the options in brackets) to the nouns below to create diminutive forms in Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book. One has been done for you as an example.

**Esempio** il ragazzo (-ino/-ina) → **il ragazzino**

**1** la sorella (-ino/-ina)

**2** la pizza (-etto/-etta)

**3** il cioccolato (-ino/-ina)

**4** la borsa (-etto/-etta)

**5** il gatto (-ino/-ina)

**6** l'appartamento (-ino/-ina)

**7** il biscotto (-ino/-ina)

**8** la mano (-ino/-ina)

**9** la maglia (-etto/-etta)

**10** il coniglio (-etto/-etta)



# Riassunto

Now you can:

form and use the imperfect tense (l'imperfetto) and talk about the past using il passato prossimo and l'imperfetto

|          | -ARE verbs   |   | -ERE verbs  |   | -IRE verbs   |   |
|----------|--|---|---|---|--|---|
|          | parlare  | to speak  | piangere  | to cry  | preferire  | to prefer   |
| singular | (io) parlavo<br>(tu) parlavi<br>(lui/lei) parlava      | I was speaking<br>you were speaking<br>he/she/it was speaking | (io) piangevo<br>(tu) piangevi<br>(lui/lei) piangeva      | I was crying<br>you were crying<br>he/she/it was crying | (io) preferivo<br>(tu) preferivi<br>(lui/lei) preferiva      | I preferred<br>you preferred<br>he/she/it preferred |
| plural   | (noi) parlavamo<br>(voi) parlavate<br>(loro) parlavano | we were speaking<br>you were speaking<br>they were speaking   | (noi) piangevamo<br>(voi) piangevate<br>(loro) piangevano | we were crying<br>you were crying<br>they were crying   | (noi) preferivamo<br>(voi) preferivate<br>(loro) preferivano | we preferred<br>you preferred<br>they preferred     |

|          | essere   | to be                              | fare  | to do                             | dire  | to say/to tell                       |
|----------|--|------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| singular | (io) ero<br>(tu) eri<br>(lui/lei) era          | I was<br>you were<br>he/she/it was | (io) facevo<br>(tu) facevi<br>(lui/lei) faceva      | I did<br>you did<br>he/she/it did | (io) dicevo<br>(tu) dicevi<br>(lui/lei) diceva      | I said<br>you said<br>he/she/it said |
| plural   | (noi) eravamo<br>(voi) eravate<br>(loro) erano | we were<br>you were<br>they were   | (noi) facevamo<br>(voi) facevate<br>(loro) facevano | we did<br>you did<br>they did     | (noi) dicevamo<br>(voi) dicevate<br>(loro) dicevano | we said<br>you said<br>they said     |

## identify Italian food stores

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| il fruttivendolo                  | the greengrocer (fruit and vegetables)                |
| la macelleria                     | the butcher   |
| il negozio di (generi) alimentari | the general store                                     |
| il panificio                      | the bakery  |
| la pescheria                      | the fishmonger  |
| la rosticceria                    | the take-away shop (literally: 'roasted meats store') |
| la salumeria                      | the delicatessen (cold meats, cheeses etc.)           |

## form diminutives with nouns to indicate size

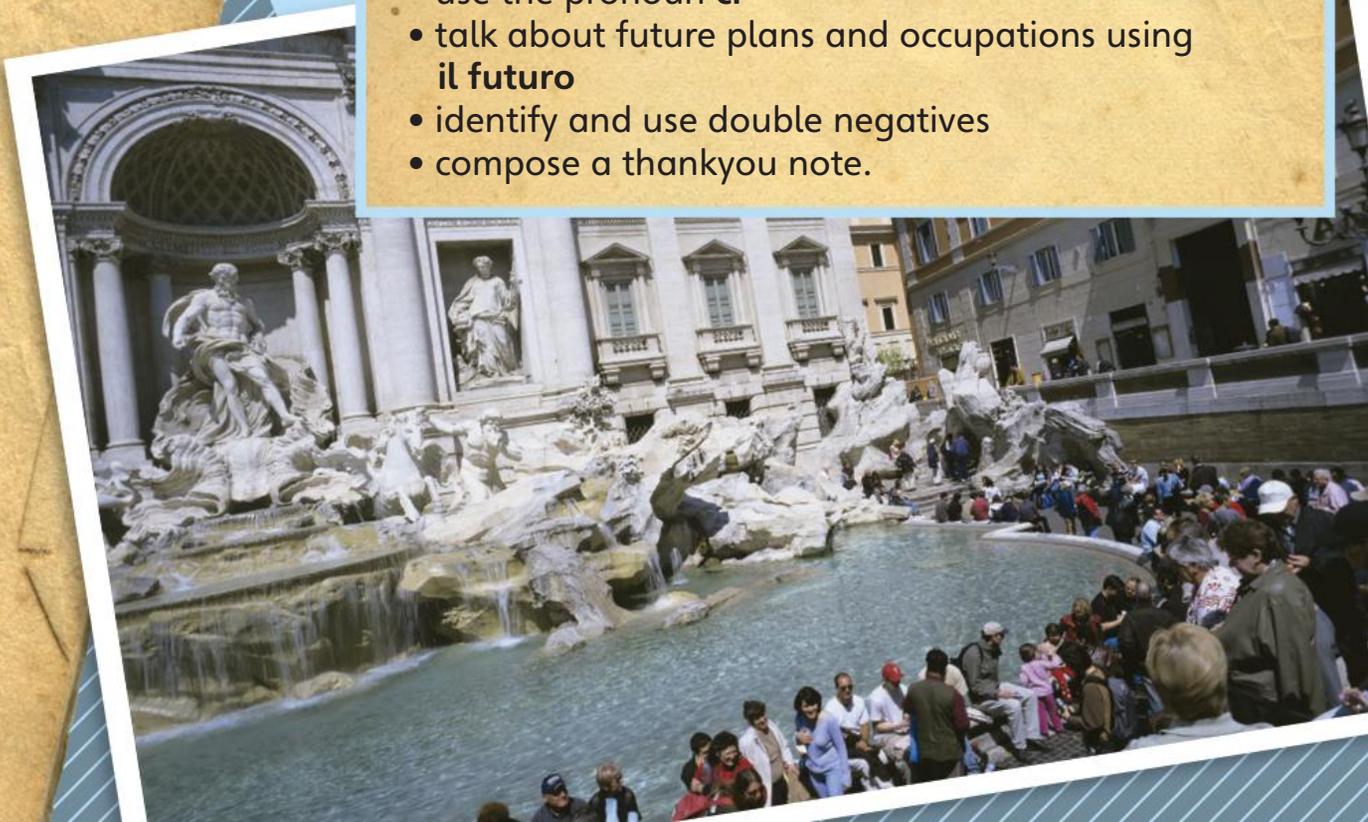
| Suffix | Noun        | Diminutive form | Meaning                    |
|--------|-------------|-----------------|----------------------------|
| -ino   | il telefono | il telefonino   | the little phone/mobile    |
| -ina   | la ragazza  | la ragazzina    | the little girl/young girl |
| -etto  | il pacco    | il pacchetto    | the little packet          |
| -etta  | la piazza   | la piazzetta    | the little town square     |

# 10

## Arrivederci Roma...

### You will learn how to:

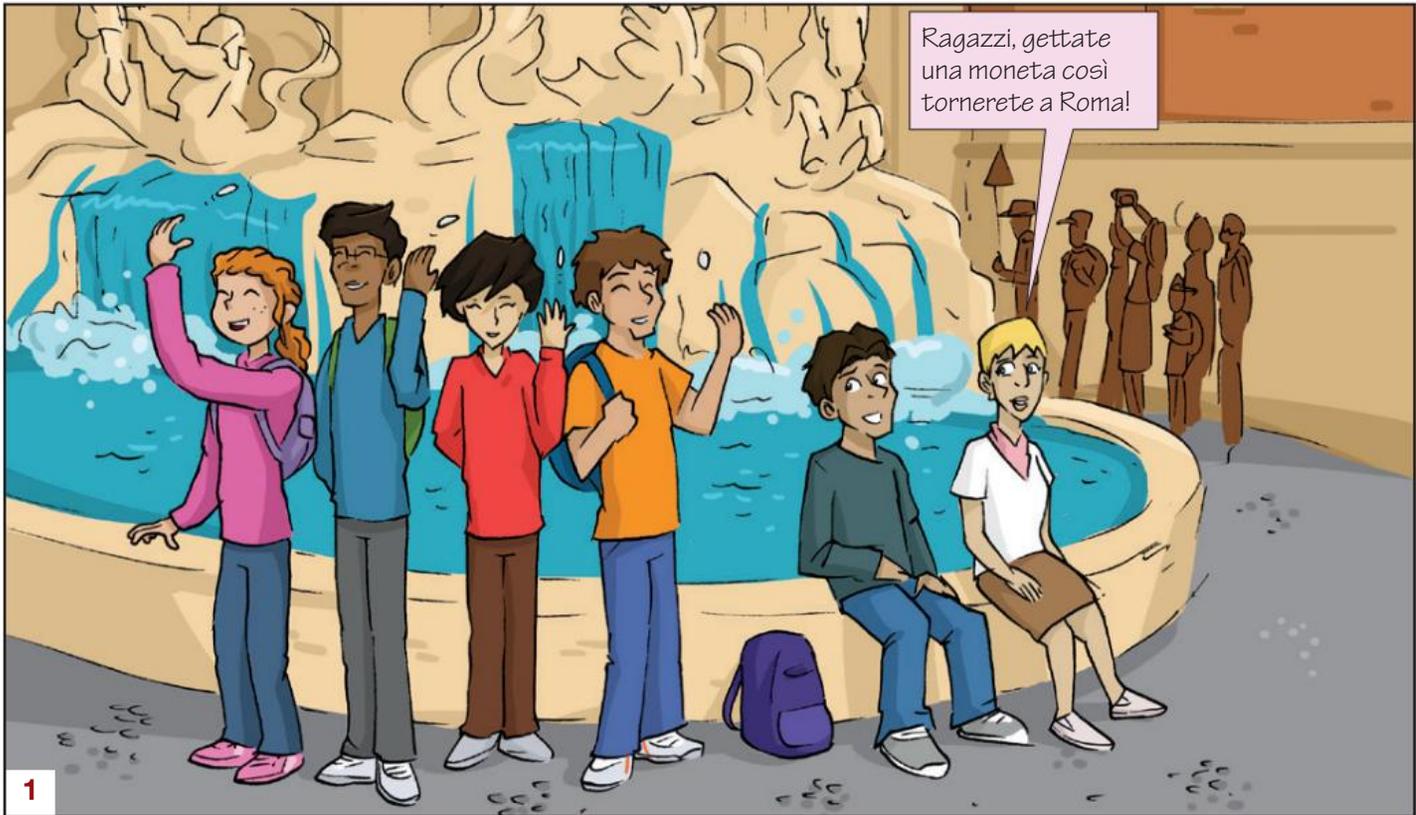
- form and use the future tense (**il futuro**)
- talk about Italian cinema
- use the pronoun **ci**
- talk about future plans and occupations using **il futuro**
- identify and use double negatives
- compose a thankyou note.



# Quel che sarà, sarà!



On their last day in **Roma**, the Australian students visit **la Fontana di Trevi** (the Trevi Fountain) with Nina and Alessandro to throw a coin in the fountain and make a wish to return to **Roma** one day.



Ragazzi, gettate una moneta così tornerete a Roma!

1

Alessandro e Nina, questi regali sono per voi, da parte di tutti noi. Grazie di tutto quello che avete fatto per noi mentre eravamo in Italia. Spero che ci rivedremo un giorno, qui in Italia o in Australia.

Ooh, che bella maglietta! Grazie. Penserò a voi quando la porto.

Grazie! È proprio quello che volevo! Ritournerai in Italia, Melanie?

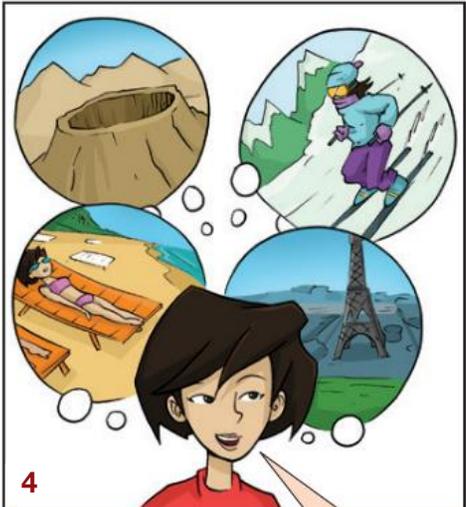
Grazie, Melanie... ma non c'era nessun bisogno di un regalo.

2

Sì, grazie. Ci rivedremo sicuramente.

Sicuramente! Finirò la scuola e poi viaggerò. Prima di tutto verrò in Italia. Ci sono molti posti che ancora non ho visto.

3



4

Quando tornerò in Italia visiterò le rovine di Pompei e scalerò il Vesuvio. Poi passerò una settimana a sciare sulle Dolomiti... esplorerò la Sardegna... e mi piacerebbe anche vedere altri paesi d'Europa.



Melanie, sei una vera esploratrice! Cosa farai da grande? L'archeologa?

Buon'idea! O farò la violinista... o forse l'allenatrice di nuoto.

5



E tu Alessandro, verrai in Australia?

Non ci sono mai stato, ma un giorno verrò!

Forse verrai con Nina!

Sfacciata!

6



Più tardi...

Mi mancherà il gelato italiano.

E la pizza.

Ci mancheranno tutti i nostri amici!

Sì, ci mancherete tanto!

7



Non volete tornare in Australia?

Sì, ma ci mancherà l'Italia!

8

Veramente sarà bello tornare in Australia e rivedere la famiglia. La prima cosa che farò... mangerò del toast con la Vegemite!



Io invece andrò subito in spiaggia.

Con la tua ragazza? Oohh...

Nathan, tu non mi mancherai per niente!

9

## ABC Glossario

### nomi

- l'archeologa** (f) the archaeologist
- l'esploratrice** (f) the explorer
- la moneta** the coin
- i paesi** the countries
- i posti** the places
- le rovine** the ruins
- il/la violinista** the violinist

### aggettivo

- sfacciato/a** cheeky

## Handy hint

The prefix **ri-** can be added to some verbs to convey the idea of doing something again—e.g. **rifare** (to do again), **ritornare** (to come back), **ridare** (to give again), **ricominciare** (to restart). **Ri-** verbs are conjugated like the original verb they relate to—e.g. **rifare** in the present tense is simply **ri-** plus the present tense of **fare** (**rifaccio, rifai, rifa, rifacciamo, rifate, rifanno**).

## avverbi

|                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| <b>sicuramente</b> | certainly |
| <b>veramente</b>   | really    |

## verbi

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <b>andrò</b>          | I will go (from <b>andare</b> —to go)  |
| <b>esplorerò</b>      | I will explore (from <b>esplorare</b> —to explore)                               |
| <b>farò</b>           | I will do/make/be (from <b>fare</b> —to do)                                      |
| <b>finirò</b>         | I will finish (from <b>finire</b> —to finish)                                    |
| <b>gettate</b>        | you (plural) throw (from <b>gettare</b> —to throw)                               |
| <b>ci mancherà</b>    | we will miss him/her/it (from <b>mancare</b> —to be missing)                     |
| <b>mi mancherà</b>    | I will miss him/her/it (from <b>mancare</b> —to be missing)                      |
| <b>mi mancherai</b>   | I will miss you (from <b>mancare</b> —to be missing)                             |
| <b>ci mancheranno</b> | we will miss them (from <b>mancare</b> —to be missing)                           |
| <b>ci mancherete</b>  | we will miss you (plural) (from <b>mancare</b> —to be missing)                   |
| <b>mangerò</b>        | I will eat (from <b>mangiare</b> —to eat)  |
| <b>passerò</b>        | I will pass time/spend time (from <b>passare</b> —to pass/<br>to spend time)     |
| <b>penserò</b>        | I will think (from <b>pensare</b> —to think)                                     |
| <b>mi piacerebbe</b>  | I would like to (from <b>piacere</b> —to like)                                   |
| <b>ritornerai</b>     | you will return (from <b>ritornare</b> —to return)                               |
| <b>rivedere</b>       | to see again   |
| <b>ci rivedremo</b>   | we will see each other again (from <b>rivedersi</b> —to see<br>each other again) |
| <b>sarà</b>           | he/she/it will be (from <b>essere</b> —to be)                                    |
| <b>scalerò</b>        | I will climb (from <b>scalare</b> —to climb)                                     |
| <b>spero</b>          | I hope (from <b>sperare</b> —to hope)  |
| <b>tornerete</b>      | you (plural) will return (from <b>tornare</b> —to return)                        |
| <b>tornerò</b>        | I will return (from <b>tornare</b> —to return)                                   |
| <b>verrai</b>         | you will come (from <b>venire</b> —to come)                                      |
| <b>verrò</b>          | I will come (from <b>venire</b> —to come)  |
| <b>viaggerò</b>       | I will travel (from <b>viaggiare</b> —to travel)                                 |
| <b>visiterò</b>       | I will visit (from <b>visitare</b> —to visit)                                    |

## altre espressioni e parole

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <b>cosa farai da grande?</b>       | what will you be when you grow up?                  |
| <b>da parte di tutti noi</b>       | from all of us (literally: 'on the part of us all') |
| <b>è proprio quello che volevo</b> | it's just what I wanted                             |
| <b>grazie di tutto</b>             | thank you for everything                            |
| <b>non c'era nessun bisogno</b>    | there was no need                                   |
| <b>non ci sono mai stato (m)</b>   | I have never been there                             |
| <b>per niente</b>                  | for nothing   |

## Attività 10.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Answer these questions, in English, in your exercise book.

- 1 What does Nina instruct the group to do in front of **la Fontana di Trevi**?
- 2 Why does Melanie give Alessandro and Nina gifts?
- 3 What does Melanie need to do before she travels again?
- 4 Where will Melanie visit when she goes back to Italy?
- 5 Why do you think Alessandro calls Melanie an explorer?
- 6 What is the first thing Jessica will do when she gets back to Australia?



### Investigazione Linguistica

#### Il futuro

The cartoon story included several examples of **il futuro** (the future tense). As the name implies, the tense is used to talk about future events.

The future tense in Italian is used in much the same way as it is in English.

#### Esempi

**Dove passerai le vacanze?** Where will you spend the holidays?

**Le passerò a Capri.** I will spend them in Capri.

In English, the future is expressed with the word 'will' or the phrase 'going to' before the verb. In Italian, only the verb with the correct future ending is needed. The future tense in Italian is easy to form and to use. Look at the table on page 170.

Quando tornerò in Italia visiterò le rovine di Pompei e scalerò il Vesuvio.



#### Handy hint

Italians may also use the present tense instead of **il futuro** if the action will take place in the near future—in the next few hours or even days. '**Stasera vado al cinema.**' or '**Stasera andrò al cinema.**' are both acceptable ways to say 'Tonight I am/ will be going to the cinema.' You can see from the translation that we have a similar choice in English.

|          | -ARE verbs        |                     | -ERE verbs         |                      | -IRE verbs        |                      |
|----------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
|          | cantare           | to sing             | scrivere           | to write             | dormire           | to sleep             |
| singular | (io) canterò      | I will sing         | (io) scriverò      | I will write         | (io) dormirò      | I will sleep         |
|          | (tu) canterai     | you will sing       | (tu) scriverai     | you will write       | (tu) dormirai     | you will sleep       |
|          | (lui/lei) canterà | he/she/it will sing | (lui/lei) scriverà | he/she/it will write | (lui/lei) dormirà | he/she/it will sleep |
| plural   | (noi) canteremo   | we will sing        | (noi) scriveremo   | we will write        | (noi) dormiremo   | we will sleep        |
|          | (voi) canterete   | you will sing       | (voi) scriverete   | you will write       | (voi) dormirete   | you will sleep       |
|          | (loro) canteranno | they will sing      | (loro) scriveranno | they will write      | (loro) dormiranno | they will sleep      |

### Handy hint

For **-isc** verbs like **finire** (e.g. **finisco**), the **-isc** is not included when forming **il futuro** (e.g. **finirò**).

What do you notice about the formation of **il futuro**? The endings for the six forms of the future tense in Italian are almost the same across all verbs.

For **-ere** and **-ire** verbs, the future ending is added to the end of the verb, once the final **-e** has been removed.

**Esempio** conoscere → conoscer- → conoscerò

For **-are** verbs, the characteristic **-a** changes to an **-e**.

**Esempio** parlare → parler- → parlerò

## Attività 10.2

Using **il futuro**, complete these sentences in your exercise book with the correct form of the verb given in brackets.

**Esempio** Loro arriveranno il sei dicembre. (*arrivare*)

1 Tu \_\_\_\_\_ la Francia la settimana prossima. (*visitare*)

2 Noi \_\_\_\_\_ insieme venerdì sera. (*uscire*)

3 Stella \_\_\_\_\_ in Italia l'anno prossimo. (*ritornare*)

4 Io \_\_\_\_\_ i compiti domenica. (*finire*)

5 Voi quando \_\_\_\_\_? (*partire*)

6 Le ragazze \_\_\_\_\_ al concerto stasera. (*cantare*)

## Attività 10.3



Listen to the audio talking about things that will happen in the future. Copy each sentence in Italian into your exercise book and write the English translation beneath it.

**Esempio** **Domenica mattina dormirò fino alle dieci.**

On Sunday morning I will sleep until ten o'clock.



### Investigazione Linguistica

#### More about il futuro

In the present tense, verbs ending in **-care** and **-gare** add a 'h' before the **tu** and **noi** endings in order to keep the hard 'c' or 'g' sound of the infinitive verb (e.g. **giocare**—**tu giochi, noi giochiamo**). This rule also applies to **il futuro**.

|          | <b>giocare</b>   | <b>to play</b>                                      | <b>pagare</b>   | <b>to pay</b>                                    |
|----------|--|---|---|--|
| singular | (io) giocherò<br>(tu) giocherai<br>(lui/lei) giocherà      | I will play<br>you will play<br>he/she/it will play | (io) pagherò<br>(tu) pagherai<br>(lui/lei) pagherà      | I will pay<br>you will pay<br>he/she/it will pay |
| plural   | (noi) giocheremo<br>(voi) giocherete<br>(loro) giocheranno | we will play<br>you will play<br>they will play     | (noi) pagheremo<br>(voi) pagherete<br>(loro) pagheranno | we will pay<br>you will pay<br>they will pay     |

Notice that a 'h' is included in all six forms of the verbs **giocare** and **pagare**. Other **-care** and **-gare** verbs follow this same pattern (e.g. **mancare**—to be missing).

In **il futuro**, verbs ending in **-ciare** and **-giare** (e.g. **cominciare** and **mangiare**) drop the 'i' before the **-are** ending and change as shown below:

|          | <b>cominciare</b>   | <b>to begin</b>  | <b>mangiare</b>   | <b>to eat</b>                                    |
|----------|---|--|---|--|
| singular | (io) comincerò<br>(tu) comincerai<br>(lui/lei) comincerà      | I will begin<br>you will begin<br>he/she/it will begin | (io) mangerò<br>(tu) mangerai<br>(lui/lei) mangerà      | I will eat<br>you will eat<br>he/she/it will eat |
| plural   | (noi) cominceremo<br>(voi) comincerete<br>(loro) cominceranno | we will begin<br>you will begin<br>they will begin     | (noi) mangeremo<br>(voi) mangerete<br>(loro) mangeranno | we will eat<br>you will eat<br>they will eat     |





Below are the future forms of several common irregular verbs.

|          | essere   | avere  |
|----------|--|--|
| singular | (io) sarò<br>(tu) sarai<br>(lui/lei) sarà      | (io) avrò<br>(tu) avrai<br>(lui/lei) avrà      |
| plural   | (noi) saremo<br>(voi) sarete<br>(loro) saranno | (noi) avremo<br>(voi) avrete<br>(loro) avranno |

|          | andare  | fare   | venire  |
|----------|---|--|---|
| singular | (io) andrò<br>(tu) andrai<br>(lui/lei) andrà      | (io) farò<br>(tu) farai<br>(lui/lei) farà      | (io) verrò<br>(tu) verrai<br>(lui/lei) verrà      |
| plural   | (noi) andremo<br>(voi) andrete<br>(loro) andranno | (noi) faremo<br>(voi) farete<br>(loro) faranno | (noi) verremo<br>(voi) verrete<br>(loro) verranno |

Ho una fame da lupo! Mangerò un grande panino per pranzo.



Durante le vacanze le stazioni in Italia saranno piene.

## Il futuro: parole utili

### The future: useful words

Here is a list of vocabulary that may come in handy when talking about the future.

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>domani</b>                   | tomorrow                   |
| <b>dopodomani</b>               | day after tomorrow         |
| <b>fra tre giorni/mesi/anni</b> | in three days/months/years |
| <b>la settimana prossima</b>    | the next week              |
| <b>il mese prossimo</b>         | the next month             |
| <b>durante le vacanze</b>       | during the holidays        |

### Attività 10.4

In your exercise book, write five sentences in Italian that each contain a phrase from the list of useful words above and a verb in the future tense.

**Esempio** Fra quattro giorni arriverà la mia amica dall'Italia.

In four days my friend is arriving from Italy.

## Attività 10.5

Using **il futuro**, complete these sentences in your exercise book with the correct form of the verb(s) given in brackets.

**Esempio** Quando le ragazze **arriveranno** noi **faremo** una festa.  
(arrivare/fare)

- 1 Quanto tempo tu \_\_\_\_\_ in Liguria? (*restare*)
- 2 Loro \_\_\_\_\_ per la Sicilia la settimana prossima. (*partire*)
- 3 Voi \_\_\_\_\_ sul treno quando \_\_\_\_\_ a Venezia il mese prossimo. (*dormire/andare*)
- 4 Dopodomani noi \_\_\_\_\_ a tennis e poi \_\_\_\_\_ un film al cinema. (*giocare/guardare*)
- 5 Il tempo \_\_\_\_\_ bello dopodomani e loro \_\_\_\_\_ un picnic. (*essere/fare*)
- 6 La scuola \_\_\_\_\_ fra qualche mese e poi io \_\_\_\_\_ un mese di vacanze. (*finire/avere*)

Getterò una moneta  
nella fontana così  
tornerò a Roma.



### Tocca a te!

Working in pairs, take turns to ask and tell your partner in Italian what you plan to do next weekend. Use **il futuro** in your questions and responses. Try to say at least three things that you plan to do—you could make them up if you want to!

**Esempio** **A:** Cosa farai sabato?  
**B:** Non lo so. Forse andrò da Michele.

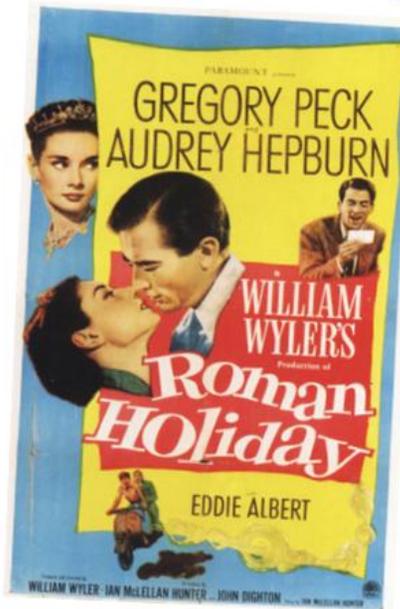
### Investigazione Culturale

## La Fontana di Trevi

**La Fontana di Trevi** is one of **Roma's** most visited landmarks. Construction of the fountain began in 1732, but the Roman aqueduct that feeds it was built way back in the first century BCE!

**La Fontana di Trevi** has also 'appeared' in cinema. It is one of the many Roman backdrops in the 1953 film **Vacanze Romane**—the first American film to feature Italy as a setting.

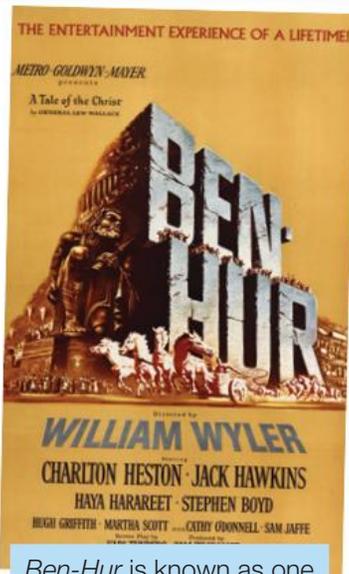
In the 1954 American film, *Three Coins in the Fountain*, there's reference to the legend that if visitors throw a coin into **la Fontana di Trevi**, they are sure to return to Rome. The coin should be thrown over your shoulder while facing away from the fountain. Approximately €3,000 (about A\$5500) is thrown into the fountain every day. There are often attempts to steal the coins so it is cleared most nights, with the money collected going towards projects for the needy around **Roma**.



### Cosa pensi?

Are there any places where you live that people can go, like **la Fontana di Trevi**, to make wishes? What do you think about the way the city of **Roma** is using the money thrown into the fountain?

Do you know of any other famous Italian or English films set in Italy? Try searching the Internet for more information on the Italian film industry, including films shot in Italy and clips of celebrated films.



*Ben-Hur* is known as one of the most successful films of all time.

## Il cinema italiano

Italy is not just a backdrop setting for some successful and popular international films (e.g. *The Italian Job*, *The Godfather: Part III*, *A Room with a View*, *The Talented Mr. Ripley* and *Angels & Demons*); it is also home to a thriving film industry, which has existed for over 100 years.

With centuries of visual arts and theatre traditions, Italy took on cinema with great enthusiasm at the end of the 1800s. Many of the early works filmed in Italy were large-scale, spectacular epics that concentrated on historical topics—especially ancient Rome. These films were soon exported to the rest of world and popular actors rose to become cinema 'stars'.

In the 1930s, the **Cinecittà** (literally: 'Cinema City') studios were founded in **Roma** and the Italian film industry went through a period of modernisation. Production budgets increased in an attempt to compete with the American film industry; **Cinecittà** started to be called the 'Italian Hollywood' and was used for several large American productions, including the epic *Ben-Hur*.

**Cinecittà** was damaged during the Second World War so for a period after the war some films were shot out in the streets, often using non-professional actors. The use of 'real' locations and 'real' people led to the style of film named **Neorealismo** (new realism). These films reflected the problems of the post-war period, were set among the poor and working class and dealt with their everyday challenges. Among the most famous **Neorealismo** films are *Ladri di biciclette* (*Bicycle Thieves*) and *Roma, città aperta* (*Rome, Open City*).

In the 1950s and 1960s, the prevailing film genre in Italy was **la commedia all'italiana** (comedy Italian-style), which was full of social satire, sketches and gags. Italian art cinema also became popular during this time, with actors such as Sofia Loren and Marcello Mastroianni, and directors such as Federico Fellini and Luchino Visconti making their name in the international film industry.

Italian cinema is also famous for 'spaghetti westerns', a genre that became popular with the release of *Per un pugno di dollari* (*A Fistful of Dollars*) in 1964. Spaghetti westerns are simply Italian versions of famous Hollywood westerns. They were filmed in Italy on low budgets, yet are famous for their unique style of cinematography.



Sofia Loren



Recently Italian films have continued to have great success in and outside Italy. You may have heard of some of the more celebrated films such as **Nuovo Cinema Paradiso** and **La vita è bella**. Roberto Benigni is a famous Italian actor who starred in and directed **La vita è bella**. His performance in the film was critically acclaimed and it won him an Academy Award for Best Actor in a Leading Role.



Roberto Benigni



See if you can figure out the English title for this spaghetti western. Hint: it is also a famous Hollywood western.



## Investigazione Linguistica

### The pronoun **ci**

In the example to the right from the cartoon story at the beginning of the chapter, Alessandro refers to Australia using **ci**. The pronoun **ci** can be used to replace a place already mentioned. In this case, it means 'there'. Notice that **ci** goes *before* the verb.

Look at these examples:

- Quando vai a Roma?** When are you going to Rome?  
**Ci andrò dopodomani.** I'm going (there) the day after tomorrow.  
**Ci sono stato ieri.** I was there yesterday.  
**Non ci vado mai.** I never go there.

Notice how in the above examples, **ci** replaces both the place and the preposition that appears before the place in the sentence.

E tu Alessandro, verrai in Australia?

Non ci sono mai stato, ma un giorno verrò!



## Attività 10.6

Rewrite these sentences in your exercise book, replacing the place name with the pronoun **ci**.

**Esempio** Arriviamo in città domani sera. —> **Ci arriviamo domani sera.**

- 1 Ieri sono andata in palestra.
- 2 Siamo passati a casa di Nina prima di partire.
- 3 Giorgio ritornerà in Australia l'anno prossimo.
- 4 Le ragazze saranno a casa stasera.
- 5 Vieni anche tu al concerto?
- 6 Andrete sul Vesuvio domani?

# Cosa farai da grande?



What will you be when you grow up?

In the cartoon story, Alessandro asked Melanie what she wants to be when she grows up. She likes Alessandro's suggestion of becoming an archaeologist, and her own ideas are to be a violinist or a swimming coach.

Here is a list of some occupations that may be part of your future aspirations.



il cuoco

|                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| l'architetto/l'architetta         | the architect              |
| l'attore/l'attrice                | the actor/the actress      |
| l'avvocato/l'avvocata             | the lawyer                 |
| il ballerino/la ballerina         | the dancer                 |
| il bibliotecario/la bibliotecaria | the librarian              |
| il cameriere/la cameriera         | the waiter/the waitress    |
| il/la commerciante                | the shopkeeper             |
| il cuoco/la cuoca                 | the cook, the chef         |
| il giardiniere/la giardiniera     | the gardener               |
| il/la giornalista                 | the journalist             |
| l'idraulico/l'idraulica           | the plumber                |
| l'infermiere/l'infermiera         | the nurse                  |
| il maestro/la maestra             | the primary school teacher |
| il meccanico/la meccanica         | the mechanic               |
| il medico                         | the doctor                 |
| il minatore                       | the miner                  |
| il pilota                         | the pilot, the driver      |
| il presentatore/la presentatrice  | the TV/radio presenter     |
| il professore/la professoressa    | the high school teacher    |
| lo scrittore/la scrittrice        | the writer                 |
| il veterinario/la veterinaria     | the veterinarian           |



la professoressa

## Handy hint

Some occupations in Italian only have a masculine form that is used even when referring to a female (e.g. **Sara è medico**).

Professions ending in **-ista** can be masculine or feminine (e.g. **il giornalista**—a male journalist or **la giornalista**—a female journalist).

# Talking about occupations

Use **fare** + definite article + occupation to say what you do/did/will do.

|             | Present tense                                 | Imperfect tense                                   | Future tense  |
|-------------|---|---|---|
| <b>Io</b>   | <b>Faccio l'idraulico.</b><br>I am a plumber. | <b>Facevo l'idraulico.</b><br>I was a plumber.    | <b>Farò l'idraulico.</b><br>I will be a plumber.    |
| <b>Loro</b> | <b>Fanno i surfisti.</b><br>They are surfers. | <b>Facevano i surfisti.</b><br>They were surfers. | <b>Faranno i surfisti.</b><br>They will be surfers. |

## Attività 10.7

Look at the list of occupations on page 176 again. What pattern can you see with occupations that end in **-tore** in the masculine form and their feminine equivalents? (There are three in the list that have both a masculine and feminine form.) What would the feminine forms of the occupations listed below be in Italian? Write your answers in your exercise book. Use a dictionary to look them up if you need help.

- 1 **l'agricoltore** the farmer
- 2 **l'indossatore** the model
- 3 **lo scultore** the sculptor
- 4 **il programmatore di computer** the computer programmer
- 5 **il giocatore** the player
- 6 **il calciatore** the soccer player
- 7 **l'albergatore** the hotel manager/owner
- 8 **il costruttore** the builder



la scultrice

## Attività 10.8



Listen to the audio of people talking about occupations. In your exercise book, make a note in English of:

- their name
- their age
- where they live
- what occupation they have/did have/will have.

**Esempio** Alessandro – 22 – Rome – tour guide



## Le professioni 'made in Italy'

These three occupations can be said to be 'made in Italy' either because they are unique to Italy or originate there.

### Il gondoliere — Venetian gondolier

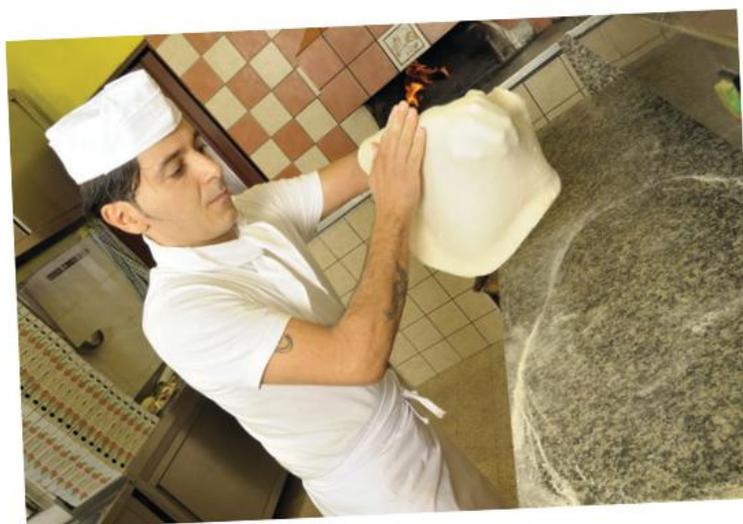
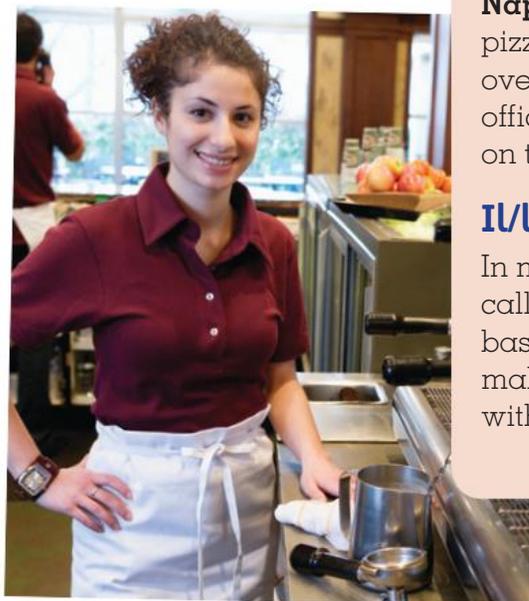
This is a highly prized job that was historically only available to men and is mostly only possible for Venetian locals to perform. The city of **Venezia** grants only 425 **gondoliere** licences at any point in time and there are years of training and a major exam to pass before one has the chance of entering **la Categoria** (the gondolier guild).

### Il pizzaiolo/la pizzaiola — pizza maker

Pizza making is a traditional Italian occupation that requires several years of study and training. Most regions of Italy have specific legislations regarding the making of pizza and the role of the **pizzaiolo**. For example, the **Associazione Verace Pizza Napoletana** (True Neapolitan Pizza Association) believes that a pizza must be hand-kneaded and then baked in a wood-fired oven for no more than a minute and a half. There are even officially approved pizza-making courses with graduates going on to practise their skills in Italy and all over the world.

### Il/la barista — specialist coffee maker

In many coffee shops in Italy you will find uniformed bartenders called **bariste** who specialise in making the finest quality coffee-based drinks. Traditionally, an Italian **barista** was trained to make alcoholic and coffee drinks, and the profession is treated with great respect among Italians.



### Cosa pensi ?

Can you think of any occupations that are unique or particularly important in Australia and why do you think they are special to Australia?



## Double negatives

You already know that to make a sentence negative, the word **non** is added before the verb. Sometimes negative pronouns or adverbs are used within the same sentence, which results in a sentence that has two negations (a double negative).

Look at these examples to see how a double negative works.

**Io non faccio niente il venerdì sera.**

I don't do anything on Friday nights./I do nothing on Friday nights.

**Non faccio mai sport.**

I never do sport./I don't ever do sport.

**I bambini non sono ancora arrivati.**

The children haven't arrived yet./The children have yet to arrive.

**Loro non conoscono nessuno qui a Perth.**

They don't know anyone here in Perth./They know no-one here in Perth.

A double negative is a two-part structure. Some of these structures were used in the examples above.

|                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>non... niente</b>     | nothing, not anything      |
| <b>non... più</b>        | no longer                  |
| <b>non... mai</b>        | never, not ever            |
| <b>non... ancora</b>     | not yet                    |
| <b>non... nessuno</b>    | nobody, no-one, not anyone |
| <b>non... per niente</b> | not at all                 |



## Tocca a te!

Working with a partner, take turns to say you don't do the following list of things. Use the **esempio** as a guide.

**Esempio** (non... più) giocare a cricket  
**Non gioco più a cricket.**

- (non... mai) mangiare la cioccolata
- (non... più) andare in moto
- (non... niente) comprare al mercato
- (non... nessuno) vedere in piazza
- (non... ancora) avere visitato il museo

## Handy hint

Did you notice how the Italian examples can be translated in two ways in English, and how the two parts of the double negative go around the verb? In most cases the **non** will go before the verb and the other negative word will go after.



## Writing a thankyou note

Grazie di tutto quello che avete fatto per noi mentre eravamo in Italia.



If you were in a position like the Australian students are in (i.e. saying goodbye and thank you), what would you write in a note to express your thanks in Italian? Here are some suggestions.

| Italian expression             | English translation                      |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Ci teniamo in contatto!        | Let's not lose contact.                  |
| Grazie, grazie, grazie!        | Thank you, thank you, thank you!         |
| Grazie di tutto.               | Thank you for everything.                |
| Grazie e arrivederci.          | Thank you and goodbye.                   |
| Mi manchi/mancate già!         | I already miss you (singular/plural)!    |
| Mi mancherai/mancherete!       | I will miss you (singular/plural)!       |
| Non vedo l'ora di tornare.     | I can't wait to return.                  |
| Mi sono divertito/a da morire! | I really enjoyed myself!                 |
| Sei/siete veramente gentile/i. | You are really kind.                     |
| Ti penserò sempre.             | I'll always think of you.                |
| Ti ringrazio di cuore.         | I thank you from the bottom of my heart. |

### Handy hint

The **ti** in 'Ti ringrazio di cuore.' or 'Ti penserò sempre.' should be replaced with **vi** if you are writing to a group.

As you have already learnt, the two main words for saying goodbye are **arrivederci** (formal) and **ciao** (informal). **Addio** is another Italian word that means goodbye. It is used when it is highly unlikely that you will see each other again (e.g. in a relationship break-up). If you plan or even hope to see the person again, you will use **arrivederci**, which has the meaning of 'until we see each other again' (**α-** until; **ri-** again; **veder-** see; **ci-** each other).

## Attività 10.9

Write a thankyou note, in Italian, for your Italian teacher to express your thanks after another year of learning Italian. You might want to tell your teacher what you liked most about Italian classes this year and what you plan to do with all the Italian that you have learnt. Be sure to sign off with an appropriate form of goodbye.

# Ripasso

1 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a During the holidays we will go to the beach.
- b My brothers will study Italian next year.
- c Patrizio is a soccer player in Italy.
- d My mother was a cook but now she is a pilot.
- e Melanie is not an archaeologist, she is a student!
- f When I finish school I will be an actor.
- g I will eat all of this ice-cream.
- h They will need a car for the trip.

2 Using the pronoun *ci* and your knowledge of double negatives, translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a I will not go there tomorrow.
- b I don't go there anymore.
- c I haven't been there yet.
- d I will never go there.
- e I won't go there because no-one is there.

3 Read the email that Fabio has written to Antonia to tell her what he's been up to and what he has planned for the weekend. Answer the questions that follow, in English, in your exercise book.



- a How does Fabio feel about school at the moment and what does he say about his maths class?
- b What has prompted Fabio's family to go away for the weekend and where are they planning to go?
- c Who will also be going with the family?
- d What are their travel plans?
- e What will Fabio do when he gets back home?

# Riassunto

Now you can:

## form and use the future tense (il futuro)

|          | -ARE verbs        |                     | -ERE verbs         |                      | -IRE verbs        |                      |
|----------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
|          | cantare           | to sing             | scrivere           | to write             | dormire           | to sleep             |
| singular | (io) canterò      | I will sing         | (io) scriverò      | I will write         | (io) dormirò      | I will sleep         |
|          | (tu) canterai     | you will sing       | (tu) scriverai     | you will write       | (tu) dormirai     | you will sleep       |
|          | (lui/lei) canterà | he/she/it will sing | (lui/lei) scriverà | he/she/it will write | (lui/lei) dormirà | he/she/it will sleep |
| plural   | (noi) canteremo   | we will sing        | (noi) scriveremo   | we will write        | (noi) dormiremo   | we will sleep        |
|          | (voi) canterete   | you will sing       | (voi) scriverete   | you will write       | (voi) dormirete   | you will sleep       |
|          | (loro) canteranno | they will sing      | (loro) scriveranno | they will write      | (loro) dormiranno | they will sleep      |

## talk about future plans and occupations using il futuro

|                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| l'architetto/l'architetta         | the architect              |
| l'attore/l'attrice                | the actor/the actress      |
| l'avvocato/l'avvocata             | the lawyer                 |
| il ballerino/la ballerina         | the dancer                 |
| il bibliotecario/la bibliotecaria | the librarian              |
| il cameriere/la cameriera         | the waiter/the waitress    |
| il/la commerciante                | the shopkeeper             |
| il cuoco/la cuoca                 | the cook, the chef         |
| il giardiniere/la giardiniera     | the gardener               |
| il/la giornalista                 | the journalist             |
| l'idraulico/l'idraulica           | the plumber                |
| l'infermiere/l'infermiera         | the nurse                  |
| il maestro/la maestra             | the primary school teacher |
| il meccanico/la meccanica         | the mechanic               |
| il medico                         | the doctor                 |
| il minatore                       | the miner                  |
| il pilota                         | the pilot, the driver      |
| il presentatore/la presentatrice  | the TV/radio presenter     |
| il professore/la professoressa    | the high school teacher    |
| lo scrittore/la scrittrice        | the writer                 |
| il veterinario/la veterinaria     | the veterinarian           |

Use **fare** + definite article + occupation to say what you do/did/will do.

|      | Present tense                          | Imperfect tense                            | Future tense                                 |
|------|--|--|--|
| Io   | Faccio l'idraulico.<br>I am a plumber. | Facevo l'idraulico.<br>I was a plumber.    | Farò l'idraulico.<br>I will be a plumber.    |
| Loro | Fanno i surfisti.<br>They are surfers. | Facevano i surfisti.<br>They were surfers. | Faranno i surfisti.<br>They will be surfers. |

## use the pronoun ci

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>Quando vai a Roma?</b>   | When are you going to Rome?               |
| <b>Ci andrò dopodomani.</b> | I'm going (there) the day after tomorrow. |
| <b>Ci sono stato ieri.</b>  | I was there yesterday.                    |
| <b>Non ci vado mai.</b>     | I never go there.                         |

## identify and use double negatives

|                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>non... niente</b>     | nothing, not anything      |
| <b>non... più</b>        | no longer                  |
| <b>non... mai</b>        | never, not ever            |
| <b>non... ancora</b>     | not yet                    |
| <b>non... nessuno</b>    | nobody, no-one, not anyone |
| <b>non... per niente</b> | not at all                 |

**Io non faccio niente il venerdì sera.**  
I don't do anything on Friday nights./I do nothing on Friday nights.

**Non faccio mai sport.**  
I never do sport./I don't ever do sport.

**I bambini non sono ancora arrivati.**  
The children haven't arrived yet./The children have yet to arrive.

**Loro non conoscono nessuno qui a Perth.**  
They don't know anyone here in Perth./They know no-one here in Perth.

# Key grammatical terms

| What is it called?      | What does it do?   | Examples  |
|-------------------------|--|---|
| Noun                    | Nouns are often called 'naming words'. They are people, animals, places and things.  | L' <b>accompagnatrice</b> si chiama <b>Nina</b> .<br><b>Roma</b> è una bella <b>città</b> .                           |
| Adjective               | Adjectives are words that describe nouns and will change according to the gender and number of the noun.   | Le ragazze sono <b>belle e alte</b> .<br>Il Colosseo è un campo <b>antico</b> .                                       |
| Verb                    | Verbs are often called 'doing words'. They describe actions, feelings and being. A verb will change depending on who is doing the action, feeling or being.                                    | Io <b>sono</b> a Roma.<br><b>Dormi</b> in camera da letto.<br><b>Andate</b> a scuola.<br><b>Giochiamo</b> a calcio.   |
| Adverb                  | Adverbs are words that modify and tell us more about a verb, an adjective or another adverb.   | Lei canta <b>lentamente</b> .<br>Faccio atletica <b>regolarmente</b> .  |
| Definite article        | Definite articles are words that mean 'the'. There are seven definite articles in Italian: <b>il, lo, l', la, i, gli</b> and <b>le</b> .   | Per colazione mangio <b>le</b> fette biscottate e bevo <b>il</b> caffè.   |
| Indefinite article      | Indefinite articles are words that mean 'a' or 'an'. There are four definite articles in Italian: <b>un, uno, una</b> and <b>un'</b> .   | Vanessa ha <b>un'</b> anatra e <b>una</b> rana.<br>Gioco a pallacanestro con <b>un</b> amico.                         |
| Subject pronoun         | Subject pronouns indicate who we are talking about and who is performing an action. There are eight main subject pronouns in Italian: <b>io, tu, lui, lei, Lei, noi, voi</b> and <b>loro</b> . | <b>Io</b> vado a Roma.<br><b>Lui</b> parla con <b>lei</b> al telefonino.<br><b>Tu</b> e Alessandro mangiate la pizza. |
| Possessive pronoun      | Possessive pronouns tell us who owns something or who something belongs to.  | Il <b>mio</b> cane è piccolo.<br><b>Sua</b> sorella va in Francia.  |
| Direct object pronoun   | Direct object pronouns are used to replace a noun that has already been mentioned. There are four direct object pronouns in Italian: <b>lo, la, li</b> and <b>le</b> .                         | Ecco la maglietta! <b>La</b> predi?<br>Parlo con Angelo. <b>Lo</b> conosci?   |
| Preposition             | Prepositions are 'function words' used in front of a noun. They show the relationship to another word (often another noun) in a sentence.  | Loretta viene <b>con</b> me.<br>Loro vanno <b>in</b> macchina.  |
| Articulated preposition | Articulated prepositions are words that are a combination of a preposition with a definite article.  | Sono <b>nella</b> mia casa.<br>Vorrei andare <b>all'</b> estero.  |
| Conjunction             | Conjunctions are known as 'joining words'. They are used to link words, phrases and clauses together.  | Oliver <b>e</b> Ali sono stanchi.<br>Vuole venire <b>ma</b> non può.  |
| Interrogative           | Interrogatives are words that usually form and start a question.   | <b>Chi</b> è quel ragazzo?<br><b>Quanto</b> costa quella chitarra?  |

# Verb tables

## essere (to be)

|                 | Present                                   |                                 | Present perfect   | Imperfect                                      | Future   |
|-----------------|---|---------------------------------|---|--|--|
| <b>singular</b> | (io) sono<br>(tu) sei<br>(lui/lei) è      | I am<br>you are<br>he/she/it is | (io) sono stato/a<br>(tu) sei stato/a<br>(lui/lei) è stato/a      | (io) ero<br>(tu) eri<br>(lui/lei) era          | (io) sarò<br>(tu) sarai<br>(lui/lei) sarà      |
| <b>plural</b>   | (noi) siamo<br>(voi) siete<br>(loro) sono | we are<br>you are<br>they are   | (noi) siamo stati/e<br>(voi) siete stati/e<br>(loro) sono stati/e | (noi) eravamo<br>(voi) eravate<br>(loro) erano | (noi) saremo<br>(voi) sarete<br>(loro) saranno |

## avere (to have)

|                 | Present                                      |                                     | Present perfect  | Imperfect  | Future   |
|-----------------|--|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| <b>singular</b> | (io) ho<br>(tu) hai<br>(lui/lei) ha          | I have<br>you have<br>he/she/it has | (io) ho avuto<br>(tu) hai avuto<br>(lui/lei) ha avuto          | (io) avevo<br>(tu) avevi<br>(lui/lei) aveva      | (io) avrò<br>(tu) avrai<br>(lui/lei) avrà      |
| <b>plural</b>   | (noi) abbiamo<br>(voi) avete<br>(loro) hanno | we have<br>you have<br>they have    | (noi) abbiamo avuto<br>(voi) avete avuto<br>(loro) hanno avuto | (noi) avevamo<br>(voi) avevate<br>(loro) avevano | (noi) avremo<br>(voi) avrete<br>(loro) avranno |

## Irregular verbs

|                 | <b>dire (to say/to tell)</b>                 | <b>venire (to come)</b>                         | <b>uscire (to go out)</b>                      | <b>dare (to give)</b>                     |
|-----------------|--|---|--|---|
| <b>singular</b> | (io) dico<br>(tu) dici<br>(lui/lei) dice     | (io) vengo<br>(tu) vieni<br>(lui/lei) viene     | (io) esco<br>(tu) esci<br>(lui/lei) esce       | (io) do<br>(tu) dai<br>(lui/lei) dà       |
| <b>plural</b>   | (noi) diciamo<br>(voi) dite<br>(loro) dicono | (noi) veniamo<br>(voi) venite<br>(loro) vengono | (noi) usciamo<br>(voi) uscite<br>(loro) escono | (noi) diamo<br>(voi) date<br>(loro) danno |

## Modal verbs

|                 | <b>dovere</b>                                   | <b>to have to</b>                            | <b>potere</b>                                    | <b>to be able to</b>                                    | <b>volere</b>                                     | <b>to want to</b>                              |
|-----------------|---|--|--|---|---|--|
| <b>singular</b> | (io) devo<br>(tu) devi<br>(lui/lei) deve        | I have to<br>you have to<br>he/she/it has to | (io) posso<br>(tu) puoi<br>(lui/lei) può         | I am able to<br>you are able to<br>he/she/it is able to | (io) voglio<br>(tu) vuoi<br>(lui/lei) vuole       | I want to<br>you want to<br>he/she/it wants to |
| <b>plural</b>   | (noi) dobbiamo<br>(voi) dovete<br>(loro) devono | we have to<br>you have to<br>they have to    | (noi) possiamo<br>(voi) potete<br>(loro) possono | we are able to<br>you are able to<br>they are able to   | (noi) vogliamo<br>(voi) volete<br>(loro) vogliono | we want to<br>you want to<br>they want to      |

## The imperative (L'imperativo)

|                            | <b>-ARE verbs</b><br><b>(girare—to turn)</b>          | <b>-ERE verbs</b><br><b>(prendere—to take)</b>              | <b>-IRE verbs</b><br><b>(finire—to finish)</b>           |
|----------------------------|---|---|--|
| <b>imperative</b>          | (tu) gira<br>(Lei) giri<br>(voi) girate               | (tu) prendi<br>(Lei) prenda<br>(voi) prendete               | (tu) finisci<br>(Lei) finisca<br>(voi) finite            |
| <b>negative imperative</b> | (tu) non girare<br>(Lei) non giri<br>(voi) non girate | (tu) non prendere<br>(Lei) non prenda<br>(voi) non prendete | (tu) non finire<br>(Lei) non finisca<br>(voi) non finite |

## The present perfect (Il passato prossimo)

|                             | <b>-ARE verbs</b>        | <b>-ERE verbs</b>    | <b>-IRE verbs</b>        |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>with essere</b>          | (io) sono andato/a       | (io) sono caduto/a   | (io) sono uscito/a       |
| <b>with avere</b>           | (io) ho mangiato         | (io) ho venduto      | (io) ho dormito          |
| <b>with reflexive verbs</b> | (io) mi sono preparato/a | (io) mi sono messo/a | (io) mi sono divertito/a |

## The imperfect (L'imperfetto)

|                 | <b>parlare</b>   | <b>to speak</b>   | <b>piangere</b>   | <b>to cry</b>   | <b>preferire</b>   | <b>to prefer</b>                                    |
|-----------------|--|---|---|---|--|---|
| <b>singular</b> | (io) parlavo<br>(tu) parlavi<br>(lui/lei) parlava      | I was speaking<br>you were speaking<br>he/she/it was speaking | (io) piangevo<br>(tu) piangevi<br>(lui/lei) piangeva      | I was crying<br>you were crying<br>he/she/it was crying | (io) preferivo<br>(tu) preferivi<br>(lui/lei) preferiva      | I preferred<br>you preferred<br>he/she/it preferred |
| <b>plural</b>   | (noi) parlavamo<br>(voi) parlavate<br>(loro) parlavano | we were speaking<br>you were speaking<br>they were speaking   | (noi) piangevamo<br>(voi) piangevate<br>(loro) piangevano | we were crying<br>you were crying<br>they were crying   | (noi) preferivamo<br>(voi) preferivate<br>(loro) preferivano | we preferred<br>you preferred<br>they preferred     |

## The future (Il futuro)

|                 | <b>cantare</b>  | <b>to sing</b>                                      | <b>scrivere</b>  | <b>to write</b>  | <b>dormire</b>  | <b>to sleep</b>  |
|-----------------|---|---|--|--|---|--|
| <b>singular</b> | (io) canterò<br>(tu) canterai<br>(lui/lei) canterà      | I will sing<br>you will sing<br>he/she/it will sing | (io) scriverò<br>(tu) scriverai<br>(lui/lei) scriverà      | I will write<br>you will write<br>he/she/it will write | (io) dormirò<br>(tu) dormirai<br>(lui/lei) dormirà      | I will sleep<br>you will sleep<br>he/she/it will sleep |
| <b>plural</b>   | (noi) canteremo<br>(voi) canterete<br>(loro) canteranno | we will sing<br>you will sing<br>they will sing     | (noi) scriveremo<br>(voi) scriverete<br>(loro) scriveranno | we will write<br>you will write<br>they will write     | (noi) dormiremo<br>(voi) dormirete<br>(loro) dormiranno | we will sleep<br>you will sleep<br>they will sleep     |

## Irregular present perfects, imperfects and futures

| <b>Infinitive</b> |            | <b>Present perfect</b>  |             |
|-------------------|------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| <b>dire</b>       | to say     | (io) <b>ho detto</b>    | I said      |
| <b>fare</b>       | to do      | (io) <b>ho fatto</b>    | I did       |
| <b>leggere</b>    | to read    | (io) <b>ho letto</b>    | I read      |
| <b>mettere</b>    | to put     | (io) <b>ho messo</b>    | I put       |
| <b>nascere</b>    | to be born | (io) <b>sono nato/a</b> | I was born  |
| <b>prendere</b>   | to take    | (io) <b>ho preso</b>    | I took      |
| <b>rispondere</b> | to respond | (io) <b>ho risposto</b> | I responded |
| <b>scrivere</b>   | to write   | (io) <b>ho scritto</b>  | I wrote     |
| <b>vedere</b>     | to see     | (io) <b>ho visto</b>    | I saw       |

|                  | <b>-ARE verbs</b> | <b>-ERE verbs</b> | <b>-IRE verbs</b> |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <b>imperfect</b> | (io) facevo       |                   | (io) dicevo       |
| <b>future</b>    | (io) giocherò     | (io) comincerò    |                   |
|                  | (io) andrò        |                   | (io) verrò        |

# Italian-English wordlist

## a

**a** to (travel to), in (live in)  
 a city, village, suburb,  
 landmark or building  
**a cento metri** within one  
 hundred metres  
**a destra** to the right  
**a domani** until tomorrow,  
 see you tomorrow  
**a dopo** see you later  
**a piedi** on foot  
**a più tardi** see you later,  
 until later  
**a pochi passi (da)** a short  
 distance (from)  
**a presto** see you soon  
**a sinistra** to the left  
**a, al, alla, all', allo, ai, alle,**  
**agli** at, to (the)  
**abbaiare** to bark  
**abbastanza** enough  
**abbigliamento** clothing  
**abitare** to live (somewhere)  
**abituare (a + inf)** to  
 accustom (to something)  
**accanto (a)** beside, near  
**accesso** login  
**accettare** to accept  
**accidenti!** damn!; oh my  
 gosh!  
**accompagnare** to go with  
**accompagnatore (m)**  
 chaperone  
**accompagnatrice (f)**  
 chaperone  
**acqua** water  
**acquario** aquarium  
**addormentarsi** to fall asleep  
**adesso** now  
**adorare** to adore, to love  
**aereo** plane  
**aeroplano** aeroplane  
**aeroporto** airport  
**affatto** at all  
**agente (m/f)** agent  
**agile/i** agile  
**agitato/a/i/e** agitated  
**agosto** August  
**agricoltore (m)** farmer  
**ahi!** ouch!  
**aiutare** to help, to assist  
**aiuto** help  
**ala** wing  
**albergatore (m)** hotel  
 manager/owner  
**albergo** hotel  
**albero** tree  
**all'angolo** on the corner  
**all'aperto** in the open (air),  
 outdoors  
**alle** at (time)  
**alle undici** at eleven  
 o'clock  
**allenamento** training  
**allenarsi** to work out  
**allenatore (m)** coach, trainer  
**allenatrice (f)** coach, trainer

**allora** in that case, then, so  
**alpinismo** mountain climbing  
**alto/a/i/e** tall  
**alzarsi** to get up  
**ambientale/i** environmental  
**ambiente (m)** environment  
**America** America  
**americano/a/i/e** American  
**amico/a** friend  
**anatra** duck  
**anche** also, too  
**anche a me** me too  
**ancora** still  
**andare** to go  
**andare avanti** to go  
 forward  
**andare indietro** to go back  
**anello (di fidanzamento)**  
 (engagement) ring  
**animale (m)** animal  
**anno** year  
**annoiarsi** to get bored  
**antico/a/hi/he** ancient  
**antipatico/a/i/he** unpleasant  
**apertura** opening  
**appartamento** apartment  
**appena** just  
**appuntamento** date,  
 appointment  
**aprile (m)** April  
**aprire** to open  
**aranciata** orange (soft) drink  
**arancione/i** orange (colour)  
**arbitro** umpire, referee  
**archeologa (f)** archaeologist  
**architetta (f)** architect  
**architetto (m)** architect  
**arrabbiarsi** to get angry  
**arrampicata** rock climbing  
**arrivare** to arrive  
**arrivederci** goodbye (formal)  
**arrivederla** goodbye (formal)  
**artiglio** claw  
**artista (m/f)** artist  
**ascoltare** to listen  
**ascoltatore (m)** listener  
**aspettare** to wait  
**atletica** athletics  
**atletico/a/i/he** athletic  
**attaccante (m/f)** attacker,  
 forward  
**attento/a/i/e** careful  
**attore (m)** actor  
**attraversare** to cross (the  
 road)  
**attrice (f)** actress  
**aula** classroom  
**Australia** Australia  
**australiano/a/i/e** Australian  
**Austria** Austria  
**autobus (m)** bus  
**automobilismo** motor racing  
**autore (m)** author  
**autrice (f)** author  
**autunno** autumn  
**avanti** come in; come on  
**avanzare** to move forward  
**avere** to have

**avere bisogno di...**  
 to need ...  
**avere caldo** to be hot  
 (body temperature)  
**avere fame** to be hungry  
**avere freddo** to be cold  
 (body temperature)  
**avere fretta** to be in a  
 hurry  
**avere paura di...** to be  
 afraid of ...  
**avere ragione** to be right  
**avere sete** to be thirsty  
**avere sonno** to be sleepy  
**avere torto** to be wrong  
**avere una fame da lupo**  
 to be starving  
**avere voglia di...** to feel  
 like ...  
**avventura** adventure  
**avventuroso/a/i/e**  
 adventurous  
**avvocata (f)** lawyer  
**avvocato (m)** lawyer  
**azzurro/a/i/e** sky blue

## b

**baci** kisses  
**bafo** whisker  
**bagno** bathroom  
**balcone (m)** balcony  
**ballerina (f)** dancer  
**ballerino (m)** dancer  
**bambino** child, little boy  
**bambola** doll  
**banana** banana  
**bancarella** market stall  
**bancomat (m)** automatic  
 teller machine (ATM)  
**bar (m)** bar, coffee bar  
**barattolo** jar  
**barba** beard  
**barca** boat  
**basket (m)** basketball  
**basso** bass guitar  
**basso/a/i/e** short  
**basta!** enough!  
**basta per ora** enough for  
 now  
**batteria** drums; battery  
**beato/a te!** lucky you!  
**becco** beak  
**beh...** well ... (expression)  
**bei voti** good marks  
**bel divertimento!** what fun!  
**Belgio** Belgium  
**bello/a/i/e** beautiful  
**bene** good, well  
**benissimo** very good, very  
 well  
**benvenuto/a/i/e** welcome  
**benzina naturale** natural  
 gas  
**bere** to drink  
**bianco/a/hi/he** white  
**bibliotecaria (f)** librarian  
**bibliotecario (m)** librarian

**bici (f, sing)** bike  
**bicicletta** bicycle  
**biglietteria** ticket office  
**biglietto** ticket  
**biglietto di corsa semplice**  
 one-way ticket  
**biologia** biology  
**biondo/a/i/e** blond (hair)  
**birichino/a/i/e** cheeky  
**biscotto** biscuit  
**bisogna (+ inf)** it is necessary  
 (to do)  
**bistecca** steak  
**blog (m)** blog  
**blu (inv)** blue  
**bocca** mouth  
**borsetta** handbag  
**bosco** forest  
**bottiglia** bottle  
**boutique (f)** fashion clothing  
 shop  
**braccia (f, pl)** arms  
**braccialetto** bracelet  
**braccio** arm  
**braccioli** Floaties  
**Brasile (m)** Brazil  
**brasiliano/a/i/e** Brazilian  
**bravissimo/a/i/e** very good  
**bravo/a/i/e** good, nice  
**bravo/a/i/e!** well done!  
**bungee jumping (m)** bungee  
 jumping  
**buono/a/i/e** good; kind  
**buon appetito!** enjoy your  
 meal!  
**buon pomeriggio** good  
 afternoon  
**buon viaggio** bon voyage,  
 have a good trip  
**buona vacanza** have a good  
 holiday  
**buonanotte** good night  
**buonasera** good evening  
**buongiorno** hello/good day  
**burro** butter

## C

**c'è** there is  
**c'è il sole** it's sunny  
**c'è vento** it's windy  
**c'era** there was  
**cadere** to fall  
**caffè (m)** coffee  
**calciatore (m)** soccer player  
**calcio** soccer  
**calle (f)** calle (narrow  
 Venetian street)  
**camera (da letto)** (bed)room  
**cameriera (f)** waitress  
**cameriere (m)** waiter  
**camminare** to walk  
**campeggio** camp  
**campo** sporting ground,  
 pitch  
**canale (m)** canal  
**canarino** canary  
**cancellare** to delete

**cane (m)** dog  
**canino/a/i/e** canine  
**canottaggio** canoeing  
**cantante (m/f)** singer  
**cantare** to sing  
**canzone (f)** song  
**capelli (pl)** hair  
**capire** to understand  
**capitale (f)** capital (city)  
**capolavoro** masterpiece  
**capoluogo** main town  
**cappello** hat  
**cappellino** cap  
**carbone (m)** carbon  
**carciofo** artichoke  
**caricare** to upload  
**carino/a/i/e** pretty, cute  
**caro/a/i/e** expensive, dear  
**carriera** career  
**cartapesta** papier-mâché  
**cartina** map  
**cartoleria** stationery shop  
**casa** house, home  
**castano/a/i/e** brown (hair)  
**cattivo/a/i/e** bad  
**cavallo** horse  
**CD di musica** music CD  
**celebrare** to celebrate  
**cellulare (m)** mobile phone  
**cena** dinner  
**cenare** to dine/to have dinner  
**cento** one hundred  
**centrocampista (m)** midfielder  
**ceramica** ceramic  
**cercare** to search, to look for  
**cercare (di + inf)** to try to (do something)  
**cereali (m, pl)** cereals  
**certo** certainly, of course  
**che** that, what, whom  
**che barba!** how boring!  
**che bello/a!** he/she is cute!, how lovely!  
**che cos'è/che cosa sono?** what is/what are?  
**che cosa dici!** what do you mean!  
**che film vuoi vedere?** what film do you want to see?  
**che folla!** what a crowd!  
**che giorno è?** what's the date?  
**che ore sono?** what time is it?  
**che peccato!** what a shame!  
**che strano!** how strange!  
**che tempo fa?** what's the weather like?  
**chi** who  
**chi parla?** who is speaking?  
**chiacchierata** chat  
**chiamare** to call  
**chiamarsi** to call oneself  
**chiaramente** clearly  
**chiedere** to ask  
**chiesa** church  
**chilo** kilo  
**chimica** chemistry  
**chitarra** guitar

**chitarra acustica** acoustic guitar  
**chitarra elettrica** electric guitar  
**chiudere** to close  
**ci** there; us, ourselves  
**ci incontriamo** we'll meet  
**ci vediamo** see you  
**ci vuole una vita** you need a lifetime  
**ciao** hi, bye  
**cibo** food  
**ciclismo** cycling  
**ciclista (m/f)** cyclist  
**cinema (m)** cinema  
**cinese/i** Chinese  
**cinquanta** fifty  
**cinque** five  
**cioccolatino** chocolate (candy)  
**cioccolato** chocolate  
**circa** about, around  
**clickare** to click  
**cliente (m)** customer  
**coda** tail  
**cognome (m)** surname  
**colazione (f)** breakfast  
**collana** necklace  
**collo** neck  
**come** how; like, similar to  
**com'è andato/a?** how did it go?  
**come no!** of course!  
**come si arriva...?** how do you get to ...?  
**come si scrive?** how do you spell ...?  
**come sta?** how are you? (formal)  
**come stai?** how are you? (informal)  
**come vola il tempo!** how time flies!  
**comico/a/i/he** funny, comical  
**cominciare** to begin, to start  
**commerciante (m/f)** shopkeeper  
**commessa (f)** shop assistant  
**commesso (m)** shop assistant  
**comodo/a/i/e** comfortable  
**compagnia** group  
**compagno** mate, partner  
**compagno di classe** classmate  
**competizione (f)** competition  
**compiti (pl)** homework  
**compleanno** birthday  
**comprare** to buy  
**computer** computer  
**comunque** in any case, anyway  
**con** with  
**con grande cura** with great care  
**concerto** concert  
**confezione (f) regalo** giftwrap  
**confine (m)** border  
**coniglio** rabbit  
**conoscere** to know (someone or something)  
**consumare** to consume  
**consumo elettrico** energy consumption

**contento/a/i/e** happy, glad  
**continuare** to continue  
**contribuire** to contribute  
**controllare** to check  
**coppa** cup  
**coppa del mondo** World Cup  
**coraggio!** come on!  
**coraggioso/a/i/e** brave  
**cornetto** croissant  
**cornice (f)** frame  
**corpo** body  
**correre** to run  
**corso** main street  
**corto/a/i/e** short  
**cosa** thing; what  
**cos'è successo?** what happened?  
**cosa fai?** what are you doing?  
**cosa farai da grande?** what will you be when you grow up?  
**così, così** so-so  
**costano un occhio della testa** they are really expensive  
**costantemente** constantly  
**costoso/a/i/e** expensive  
**costruttore (m)** builder  
**costume (m)** costume  
**costume da bagno** swim suit  
**creativo/a/i/e** creative  
**credere** to believe  
**crema** cream, custard  
**cremoso/a/i/e** creamy  
**cricket (m)** cricket  
**cucina** kitchen, cooking, cuisine  
**cucinare** to cook  
**cugina (f)** cousin  
**cugino (m)** cousin  
**culturale/i** cultural  
**cuoco (f)** cook, chef  
**cuoco (m)** cook, chef  
**d**  
**d'accordo** all right then  
**d'oro** of gold  
**da, dal, dalla, dall', dallo, dai, dalle, dagli** from/by (the)  
**da leccarsi i baffi!** it's finger-licking good!  
**da parte di tutti noi** from all of us  
**da solo** by oneself  
**dai!** come on!  
**dai che ce la fai!** you can do it!  
**Danimarca** Denmark  
**dappertutto** everywhere  
**dare** to give  
**davanti** in front; opposite  
**davanti (a)** in front (of)  
**davvero** really, indeed  
**decidere** to decide  
**decimo/a/i/e** tenth  
**delizioso/a/i/e** delicious; delightful  
**dente (m)** tooth  
**descrivere** to describe

**desidera?** can I help you?/ what would you like?  
**desiderare** to desire  
**di, del, della, dell', dello, dei, delle, degli** from, of (the)  
**di cosa** of what, what about  
**di fronte (a)** opposite, facing, in front of  
**di nuovo** again  
**di solito** usually  
**dicembre** December  
**diciannove** nineteen  
**diciassette** seventeen  
**diciotto** eighteen  
**diedi** ten  
**difendere** to defend; to protect  
**difensore (m)** defender  
**difesa** defence  
**difficile/i** difficult  
**dipingere** to paint  
**dire** to say, to tell  
**direzione (f)** direction  
**discesa** descent  
**discoteca** disco  
**disegnare** to design, to draw  
**dispiacersi** to be sorry  
**dita (f, pl)** fingers  
**dito (m)** finger  
**diventare** to become  
**divertente/i** fun, funny  
**divertirsi** to enjoy oneself  
**divisa** uniform  
**DJ (m/f)** DJ  
**documento** document  
**dodici** twelve  
**dolce (m)** dessert  
**dolce/i** sweet  
**dolorante/i** sore, aching  
**domandare** to ask  
**domani** tomorrow  
**domenica** Sunday  
**donna** woman  
**dopo** after, later  
**dopodomani** day after tomorrow  
**dormire** to sleep  
**dove** where  
**dov'è** where is  
**dove si trova...?** where is/ where can you find ...?  
**dove sono** where are  
**dovere** to have to, must  
**droitto** straight  
**due** two  
**dunque** so, well (then)  
**duomo** main cathedral  
**durante** during  
**durante le vacanze** during the holidays  
**durare** to last  
**duro/a/i/e** hard  
**e**  
**e** and  
**e poi...** and then ...  
**e già!** of course!  
**è** he/she/it is  
**è un po' tocco/a / pazzo/a** he/she is a bit crazy  
**è/sono in offerta** it is/they are on special

**ecco** here, here is, here are  
**educazione (f) fisica** physical education  
**effetto** effect  
**effetto serra** greenhouse effect  
**elegante/i** elegant  
**elettricità** electricity  
**email (f)** email  
**emozionante/i** exciting  
**entrare** to enter  
**entrata** entrance (hall)  
**era ora** about time  
**eroe (m)** hero  
**esaurimento delle fonti energetiche** exhaustion of energy resources  
**esercizio** exercise  
**esperienza** experience  
**esplorare** to explore  
**esploratore (m)** explorer  
**esploratrice (f)** explorer  
**essere** to be  
**essere all'ultima moda** to be the latest fashion/trend  
**essere alla moda** to be in fashion  
**essere in anticipo** to be early  
**essere in ritardo** to be late  
**essere nei guai** to be in a pickle  
**estate (f)** summer  
**età** age

**f**  
**fa bel tempo** it's nice weather  
**fa brutto tempo** it's terrible weather  
**fa caldo** it's hot  
**fa freddo** it's cold  
**fa parte di...** he/she/it is part of ...  
**fa schifo!** it's disgusting!  
**facile/i** easy  
**famiglia che mi ospita** host family  
**famoso/a/i/e** famous  
**fantastico/a/i/he** fantastic  
**fare** to do, to play (sports)  
**fare attenzione** to take care, to pay attention  
**fare bella/brutta figura** to make a good/bad impression  
**fare finta** to pretend  
**fare l'upload** to upload  
**fare presto** to be quick  
**farsi la doccia** to have a shower  
**farsi male** to hurt oneself  
**farmacia** pharmacy  
**favoloso/a/i/e** fabulous  
**febbraio** February  
**felice/i** happy  
**fermare** to stop  
**fermata** (bus, tram) stop  
**fermo/a/i/e** still  
**festa** holiday, party  
**festa del lavoro** Labour Day  
**centottantotto**

**festeggiare** to celebrate  
**festival di musica** music festival  
**fetta** slice  
**fetta di pane** slice of bread  
**fette (pl) biscottate** crispbread  
**fico!** cool!  
**figlia** daughter  
**figlio** son  
**film (m)** film  
**film comici** comedy films  
**film dell'orrore** horror films  
**film di fantascienza** science-fiction films  
**film drammatici** drama films  
**film gialli** thrillers  
**film romantici** romantic (comedy) films  
**filosofia** philosophy  
**finalmente!** finally!  
**fine (f)** end  
**finestra** window  
**finire** to finish  
**finito/a/i/e** finished  
**Finlandia** Finland  
**fino a** until, till  
**fiorentino/a/i/e** Florentine  
**fisica** physics  
**fiume (m)** river  
**flauto** flute  
**football australiano** Australian Rules football  
**forse** maybe  
**forte/i** strong  
**sei forte!** you're great!  
**fortunatamente** fortunately  
**fortunato/a/i/e** fortunate, lucky  
**forza!** come on!  
**forza Italia!** come on Italy!  
**foto (f, sing/pl)** photo(s)  
**fra** in; between  
**fra poco** soon  
**fra tre giorni/mesi/anni** in three days/months/years  
**fragola** strawberry  
**francese/i** French  
**Francia** France  
**fratellastro** half-brother, stepbrother  
**fratellino** little brother  
**fratello** brother  
**fratello maggiore** older brother  
**frigo** fridge  
**frutta** fruit  
**frutta e verdura** fruit and vegetables  
**frutti di bosco** fruits of the forest  
**fruttivendolo** greengrocer  
**fungo** mushroom  
**funzionare** to work, to function  
**futuro** future  
**g**  
**gabinetto** toilet  
**gamba** leg  
**gara** competition, contest

**garage (m)** garage  
**gatto** cat  
**gelateria** ice-cream shop  
**gelato** ice-cream  
**al cioccolato** chocolate-flavoured (ice-cream)  
**al torrone** nougat-flavoured (ice-cream)  
**alla fragola** strawberry-flavoured (ice-cream)  
**alla nocciola** hazelnut-flavoured (ice-cream)  
**alla vaniglia** vanilla-flavoured (ice-cream)  
**genitore (m)** parent  
**gennaio** January  
**Germania** Germany  
**gettare** to throw  
**già** already  
**giacca** jacket  
**giallo/a/i/e** yellow  
**Giappone** Japan  
**giapponese/i** Japanese  
**giardiniera (f)** gardener  
**giardiniere (m)** gardener  
**giardino** garden  
**ginocchia (f, pl)** knees  
**ginocchio (m)** knee  
**giocare (a)** to play (a sport, game, toy)  
**giocatore (m)** player  
**giocatrice (f)** player  
**giochi olimpici** Olympics  
**gioco** game  
**gioielleria** jewellery shop  
**gioiello** jewel  
**giornale (m)** newspaper  
**giornalista (m/f)** journalist  
**giorno** day  
**giovane/i** young  
**giovedì (m)** Thursday  
**girare** to turn  
**giro** tour, ride  
**Giro d'Italia** Tour of Italy  
**giugno** June  
**gladiatore (m)** gladiator  
**gnam, gnam!** yum, yum!  
**gnocco** dumpling  
**gnomo** gnome  
**gol (m)** goal  
**golf (m)** golf  
**gomito** elbow  
**gonna** skirt  
**grammatica** grammar  
**grande/i** big  
**grande magazzino** department store  
**grandissimo/a/i/e** very big  
**gratis** free  
**grazie** thank you  
**grazie di tutto** thank you for everything  
**Grecia** Greece  
**greco/a/i/he** Greek  
**grigio/ia/i/e** grey  
**gruppo** band, group  
**quanto** glove  
**guardare** to look at, to watch (TV)  
**gusto** taste, flavour  
**gusti alla crema** cream flavours

**gusti alla frutta** fruit flavours

## h

**hotel (m)** hotel

## i

**idea** idea  
**idraulica (f)** plumber  
**idraulico (m)** plumber  
**ieri** yesterday  
**imbarco** boarding (point)  
**imbranato/a/i/e** clumsy  
**immagine (f)** image, picture  
**imparare** to learn  
**importante/i** important  
**impronta ecologica** carbon footprint  
**in** to (travel to), in (live in) states/territories, regions, countries, continents  
**in bocca al lupo!** break a leg!/good luck!  
**in fondo** at/to the end  
**incontrare** to meet  
**incontrarsi con** to meet with  
**incrocio** intersection  
**indirizzo** web address  
**indossatore (m)** model  
**infatti** as a matter of fact, in fact  
**infermiera (f)** nurse  
**infermiere (m)** nurse  
**Inghilterra** England  
**inglese/i** English  
**ingresso** entrance  
**inizio** beginning, start  
**innamorarsi** to fall in love  
**insegnare** to teach  
**insieme** together  
**intelligente/i** intelligent  
**interessante/i** interesting  
**interessarsi** to be interested in  
**interesse (m)** interest, hobby  
**Internet (m)** Internet  
**intervallo** recess  
**inutile/i** useless  
**invece** on the other hand, instead  
**invece di** instead of  
**inverno** winter  
**inviare** to send  
**invitare** to invite  
**io** I  
**Irlanda** Ireland  
**isola** island  
**Italia** Italy  
**italiano/a/i/e** Italian  
**j**  
**jeans (m, pl)** jeans  
**k**  
**kayak (m)** kayaking  
**l**  
**là** there  
**labbra (f, pl)** lips  
**labbro (m)** lip  
**lago** lake  
**latino** Latin  
**latte (m)** milk

**lavagna** blackboard  
**lavanderia** laundry  
**lavare** to clean, to wash  
**lavarsi** to wash oneself  
**lavorare** to work  
**lavoro** work, job  
**leggere** to read  
**lei** she, her  
**Lei** you (formal)  
**Leone** Leo (zodiac sign)  
**lettore MP3** MP3 player  
**lezione (f)** lesson  
**li, le** them (pronoun)  
**libanese/i** Lebanese  
**Libano** Lebanon  
**libreria** bookshop  
**libretto** booklet  
**libro** book  
**liceo** high school  
**liceo scientifico** science high school  
**limonata** lemonade  
**limone (m)** lemon  
**lingua** language; tongue  
**lingue straniere** foreign languages  
**link (m)** link  
**liscio/ia/i/e** straight  
**litigare** to argue, to fight  
**lo, la** him, her, it (pronoun)  
**login (m)** login  
**logout (m)** logout  
**lontano/a/i/e** far away  
**loro** they; their; theirs  
**luce (f)** light  
**lucertola** lizard  
**luglio** July  
**lui** he, him  
**lunedì (m)** Monday  
**lungo** along  
**lungo/a/hi/he** long  
**Lussemburgo** Luxembourg

## m

**ma** but  
**macché!** of course not!  
**macchina** car  
**macchina fotografica** photographic camera  
**macelleria** butcher  
**madre (f)** mother  
**maestra (f)** primary school teacher  
**maestro (m)** primary school teacher  
**maggio** May  
**maggiore/i** older, bigger  
**magico/a/i/he** magic  
**maglietta** T-shirt  
**maglione (m)** jumper  
**magnifico/a/i/he** magnificent, amazing  
**magro/a/i/e** slim  
**male** badly; unwell  
**mal di denti** toothache  
**mal di stomaco** stomach-ache  
**mal di testa** headache  
**sto male** I feel sick  
**mamma** mum  
**mamma mia!** oh my gosh!  
**mancare** to be missing  
**mandare** to send

**mandare un SMS a...** to send a SMS to ...  
**mangiare** to eat  
**mani (f, pl)** hands  
**mano (f)** hand  
**in mano** in (somebody's hands)  
**mare (m)** sea  
**margarina** margarine  
**marito** husband  
**marmellata** jam  
**marrone/i** brown  
**martedì (m)** Tuesday  
**marzo** March  
**maschera veneziana** Venetian mask  
**matematica** mathematics  
**materia** subject  
**matrigna** stepmother  
**mattina** morning  
**stamattina** this morning  
**me** me  
**me ne frego!** I couldn't care less!  
**meccanica (f)** mechanic  
**meccanico (m)** mechanic  
**medaglia d'oro** gold medal  
**medico (m)** doctor  
**meglio** better  
**melodia** melody  
**meno** less  
**meno... di/che...** less ... than ...  
**mentre** while  
**meraviglioso/a/i/e** wonderful, marvellous  
**mercoledì (m)** Wednesday  
**mese (m)** month  
**mese prossimo** next month  
**metà** half  
**mettere** to put  
**mettersi** to put on oneself  
**mi** me

**mi dispiace** I'm sorry  
**mi fa venire l'acquolinain bocca** (it) makes my mouth water  
**mi mangerei un cavallo!** I could eat a horse!  
**miele (m)** honey  
**migliore/i** the best  
**mille grazie!** thank you very much!  
**minatore (m)** miner  
**mio/a/ei/e** my  
**moda** fashion  
**moderno/a/i/e** modern  
**molto** very, a lot  
**moltissimo/a/i/e** very much  
**momento** moment  
**mondo** world  
**moneta** coin  
**montagna** mountain  
**morire** to die  
**mostra** exhibition, display  
**mostrare** to show  
**motocross (m)** motocross  
**motorino** motor scooter  
**mountain biking (m)** mountain biking  
**museo** museum

**musica** music  
**musica classica** classical music  
**musica elettronica** electronic music  
**musica jazz** jazz music  
**musica pop** pop music  
**musica rap** rap music  
**musica rock** rock music  
**musicista (m/f)** musician

## n

**nascere** to be born  
**nascita** birth  
**naso** nose  
**natura** nature  
**nave (f)** ship  
**navigare su Internet** to surf the Internet  
**nazionale/i** national  
**negozio** shop  
**negozio di abbigliamento** clothing store  
**negozio di articoli sportivi** sporting goods shop  
**negozio di (generi) alimentari** general store  
**negozio di giocattoli** toy shop  
**negozio di scarpe** shoe shop  
**negozio di souvenir** souvenir shop  
**neozelandese/i** New Zealander  
**nero/a/i/e** black  
**nervoso/a/i/e** nervous  
**netball (m)** netball  
**nevica** it's snowing  
**niente** nothing  
**nipote (m/f)** grandson, granddaughter; nephew, niece  
**Nizza** Nice (a city in France)  
**nocciola** hazelnut  
**noi** us, we  
**noioso/a/i/e** boring  
**nome (m)** name  
**nome utente (m)** username  
**non** not  
**non basta una vita!** a lifetime isn't long enough!  
**non c'è bisogno di (+ inf)** there's no need to (do)  
**non c'è male** not too bad  
**non ci ho visto più** I lost my temper  
**non importa** never mind, it doesn't matter  
**non lo so** I don't know  
**non m'importa** I don't care  
**non mi va** I don't feel like (it)  
**non preoccuparti** don't worry  
**non sto bene** I don't feel well  
**non vedo l'ora di (+ inf)...** I can't wait until/to ...  
**non... ancora** not yet

**non... mai** never, not ever  
**non... nessuno** nobody, no-one, not anyone  
**non... niente** nothing, not anything  
**non... per niente** not at all  
**non... più** no longer  
**nonna** grandmother  
**nonno** grandfather  
**nono/a/i/e** ninth  
**nord (m)** north  
**nostro/a/i/e** our  
**notte (f)** night  
**novanta** ninety  
**nove** nine  
**novembre** November  
**numero** number  
**il mio numero di telefono è...** my phone number is ...  
**nuotare** to swim  
**nuotatore (m)** swimmer  
**nuotatrice (f)** swimmer  
**nuoto** swimming  
**Nuova Zelanda** New Zealand  
**nuovo/a/i/e** new

## o

**o** or  
**occhi** eyes  
**occhiali** glasses, spectacles  
**occhiali da sole** sunglasses  
**occhio** eye  
**occidentale/i** west, westerly  
**offerta** donation; offer  
**oggetto** object; subject (of an email)  
**oggi** today  
**oliva** olive  
**ombrello** umbrella  
**onda** wave  
**ondulato/a/i/e** wavy  
**oppure** or, otherwise  
**ora** hour, time; (school) period  
**orario** schedule, timetable  
**orecchie (f, pl)** ears  
**orecchino** earring  
**orecchio (m)** ear  
**organizzato/a/i/e** organised  
**orologio** watch, clock  
**ospedale (m)** hospital  
**ospite (m/f)** guest, host  
**ottanta** eighty  
**ottavo/a/i/e** eighth  
**ottimo/a/i/e** excellent  
**ottima idea!** excellent idea!  
**otto** eight  
**ottobre** October  
**ovviamente** obviously

## p

**pacchetto** packet  
**padre (m)** father  
**padrona** owner  
**paesaggio** landscape  
**paese (m)** country  
**Paesi Bassi** Netherlands  
**pagina web** web page  
**palazzo** building; palace  
**palestra** gym

**palla** ball  
**pallacanestro (f)** basketball  
**pallavolo (f)** volleyball  
**palloncino** balloon  
**pane (m)** bread  
**panificio** bakery  
**panino** bread roll  
**papà (m)** dad  
**Papa (m)** Pope  
**papagallino** budgie  
**pappagallo** parrot  
**paracadutismo** parachuting  
**parapendio** paragliding  
**parco** park  
**parlare** to speak, to talk  
**parola** word  
**parole** lyrics; words  
**parte (f)** part  
**partire** to leave  
**partita** game, match  
**passare** to spend time  
**passatempo** pastime  
**passaggiata** walk, stroll  
**password (f)** password  
**pasticceria** cake shop  
**patata** potato  
**patatine** chips  
**patigno** stepfather  
**paziente/i** patient  
**pazzo/a/i/e** crazy  
**Pechino** Beijing  
**pedana elastica** trampoline  
**peggiore/i** the worst  
**pelle (f)** leather  
**pelletteria** leather goods shop  
**pelo** fur  
**pensare** to think  
**pensione (f)** guest house  
**per** for  
**per cortesia** excuse me  
**per favore** please  
**per niente** for nothing  
**per cento** per cent  
**perché** because  
**perché?** why?  
**perciò** so, therefore, that is why  
**perdere** to lose  
**perfetto/a/i/e** perfect  
**pericoloso/a/i/e** dangerous  
**perlina** bead (jewellery)  
**permesso?** may I?  
**permettere** to allow  
**però** but, however  
**persone (f, pl)** people  
**pesca** fishing; peach  
**pesce (m)** fish  
**pescheria** fishmonger  
**petrolio** oil, petroleum  
**pettinarsi** to brush one's hair  
**piacere** to like; pleased to meet you  
**mi piace da morire!** I'm mad about him/her/it!  
**piangere** to cry  
**piano** floor (of a building); softly; slowly  
**pianoforte (m)** piano  
**piatti (pl)** (DJ) turntable  
**piatto** plate; dish  
**piazza** town square

**piccolo/a/i/e** small, little  
**piede (m)** foot  
**pigro/a/i/e** lazy  
**pilota (m/f)** pilot, driver  
**pinna** fin  
**piove** it's raining  
**piovere** to rain  
**piscina** swimming pool  
**pistacchio** pistachio  
**pista** (ski) slope  
**più** more  
**più... di/che...** more ... than ...  
**piuma** feather  
**pizza margherita** margherita pizza  
**pizzeria** pizza restaurant  
**po'** bit  
**un po' (di)** a bit (of)  
**podcast (m)** podcast  
**pollice (m)** thumb  
**pomeriggio** afternoon  
**ponte (m)** bridge  
**popolare/i** popular  
**porcellino d'India** guinea pig  
**porta** door; goal  
**portafoglio** wallet  
**portare** to wear; to carry  
**portiere (m)** goalkeeper  
**Portogallo** Portugal  
**posto** place  
**potere** to be able to  
**poverino/a/i/e!** poor thing(s)!  
**povero/a/i/e** poor  
**pranzo** lunch  
**preferire** to prefer  
**preferito/a/i/e** favourite  
**prego** you're welcome  
**prendere** to catch, to get, to take  
**preoccuparsi** to be worried  
**preparare** to prepare  
**prepararsi** to prepare oneself, to get ready  
**presentare** to introduce  
**presentatore (m)** TV/radio presenter  
**presentatrice (f)** TV/radio presenter  
**presto** soon, early  
**previsioni (f, pl) del tempo** weather forecast  
**prezzo** price  
**primavera** spring  
**primo/a/i/e** first  
**principale/i** main  
**problema (m)** problem  
**proccuparsi** to worry  
**non preoccuparti** don't worry  
**prof (m/f)** teacher  
**professore (m)** high school teacher  
**professoressa (f)** high school teacher  
**profumeria** beauty products, perfume shop  
**profumo** perfume  
**progetto** project  
**programmatore (m) di computer** computer programmer

**pronto** ready; hello (when answering the phone)  
**proprio** really  
**proprio/a/i/e** own  
**prosciutto** ham  
**protagonista (m/f)** protagonist, lead role  
**provare (a + inf)** to try (to do something)  
**psicologa (f)** psychologist  
**psicologo (m)** psychologist  
**pullman (m)** bus, coach  
**purtroppo** unfortunately

## Q

**qual?/quale?/quali?** which?  
**qual è?/quali sono?** which is?/which are?  
**qual è il problema?** what is the problem?  
**qual è il tuo numero di telefono?** what is your phone number?  
**qualche volta** sometimes  
**qualcosa** something  
**quando** when  
**quanto** how much  
**quanto mi piace** I really like (him/her/it)

**quaranta** forty  
**quarto/a/i/e** fourth  
**quattordici** fourteen  
**quattro** four  
**quello, quella, quei/quegli, quelle** that, those (adj)  
**quello, quella, quelli, quelle** that, those (pronoun)  
**questo/a/i/e** this  
**qui** here  
**qui vicino** near here  
**quindi** well then, so, therefore  
**quindici** fifteen  
**quinto/a/i/e** fifth

## R

**racchetta** racquet  
**raccogliere** to collect  
**ragazza** girl, girlfriend  
**ragazzo** boy, boyfriend  
**rana** frog  
**raramente** rarely  
**regalo** gift  
**regione (f)** region  
**Regno Unito** United Kingdom  
**regolarmente** regularly  
**religione (f)** religion  
**residenza** residence/place where you live  
**responsabilità** responsibility  
**riccio/ia/i/e** curly  
**ricerca** study, survey  
**ricetta** recipe  
**riciclare** to recycle  
**ricordarsi** to remember  
**ricotta** ricotta  
**ricreazione (f)** recess (at school)  
**ridere** to laugh  
**rimanere** to remain  
**rio** (narrow) canal  
**riposarsi** to rest

**riscaldamento globale** global warming  
**risk** risk  
**rispondere** to respond  
**risposta** answer  
**ristorante (m)** restaurant  
**ritmo** rhythm  
**ritornare** to return  
**riuscire (a + inf)** to manage (to do)  
**riva** quay  
**riverdere** to see again  
**riverdersi** to see each other again  
**robusto/a/i/e** robust, strong  
**roditore (m)** rodent  
**Roma** Rome  
**romano** Roman  
**romantico/a/i/he** romantic  
**rompersi** to break down  
**rosa (inv)** pink  
**rosso/a/i/e** red  
**rosticceria** take-away shop  
**rotondo/a/i/e** round  
**rotto/a/i/e** broken  
**rovina** ruin  
**rucola** rocket (leaf vegetable)  
**rugby (m)** rugby  
**rumore (m)** noise

## S

**sabato** Saturday  
**sala** hall, room  
**sala d'arrivo** arrivals hall/room  
**sala da pranzo** dining room  
**salire** to go up  
**salotto** lounge room  
**salsiccia** sausage  
**saltare** to jump  
**salumeria** delicatessen  
**salutare** to say hello, to greet  
**saluti** regards (in an email)  
**saluto** greeting  
**salvare** to save  
**salvo/a/i/e** safe, unharmed  
**Samoa** Samoa  
**samoano/a/i/e** Samoan  
**sano/a/i/e** sound, healthy  
**sapere** to know (a fact)  
**sassofono** saxophone  
**sbarco** landing  
**sbrigharsi** to hurry up  
**scala** staircase  
**scalare** to climb  
**scappare** to run away  
**scaricare** to download  
**scarpa** shoe  
**scarpe di ginnastica** training/running shoes  
**scelta** choice  
**scena** scene  
**scendere** to descend, to get off, to disembark  
**scheda** card  
**scheletro** skeleton  
**scherzare** to joke  
**scherzo!** I'm joking!  
**scherzo** joke  
**schiena** back

**sci (m, sing)** skiing  
**sciare** to ski  
**sciarpa** scarf  
**scienze (pl)** science  
**scimmia** monkey  
**scivolone (m)** slide, fall  
**scoiattolo** squirrel  
**sconto** discount  
**scorso/a/i/e** last, past  
**scrittore (m)** writer  
**scrittrice (f)** writer  
**scrivere** to write, to spell  
**scrivimi presto** write soon  
**scudo** shield  
**scultore (m)** sculptor  
**scuola** school  
**scusare** to excuse, to forgive  
**scusa** sorry, excuse me (informal)  
**scusi** sorry, excuse me (formal)  
**se** if  
**secondo** second (time)  
**secondo/a/i/e** second  
**secondo me** in my opinion  
**sedere** bottom, backside  
**sedici** sixteen  
**segnare** to score  
**segno zodiacale** zodiac sign  
**seguire** to follow  
**seguito/a/i/e** popular, followed  
**sei** six  
**semaforo** traffic lights  
**sembrare** to seem  
**sempre** always  
**sempre dritto** straight ahead  
**sentire** to hear  
**sentirsi** to feel  
**senz'altro** of course  
**sera** evening  
**serio/ia/i/e** serious  
**serpente (m)** snake  
**sessanta** sixty  
**sesto/a/i/e** sixth  
**sette** seven  
**settembre** September  
**settimana** week  
**settimana prossima** next week  
**settimo/a/i/e** seventh  
**severo/a/i/e** strict  
**sfacciato/a/i/e** cheeky  
**sfilata di moda** fashion show  
**sicuramente** certainly  
**sicuro/a/i/e** secure, sure  
**signora** madam, Mrs (title)  
**signore (m)** sir, Mr (title)  
**signorina** miss, Miss (title)  
**silenzioso** quiet  
**simpatico/a/i/he** kind, likeable, nice  
**sito web (m)** website  
**skateboard (m)** skateboard  
**smettere** to stop  
**smettita!** stop it!  
**SMS (m)** SMS  
**socievole/i** friendly  
**soggiorno** living room  
**soldi (pl)** money

**solo** only  
**soltanto (se)** only (if)  
**soprannome (m)** nickname  
**sorella** sister  
**sorellastra** half-sister, stepsister  
**spaghetti (pl)** spaghetti  
**Spagna** Spain  
**spagnolo/a/i/e** Spanish  
**spalla** shoulder  
**spaventarsi** to get frightened  
**specchio** mirror  
**speciale/i** special  
**spegnere** to switch off  
**spendere** to spend  
**sperare** to hope  
**spesa** shopping  
**spesso** often, frequently  
**spiaggia** beach  
**splendere** to shine  
**spogliarsi** to undress oneself  
**sport estremi** extreme sports  
**sportivo/a/i/e** sporty  
**squadra** team  
**squama** fish scale  
**stadio** stadium  
**stagione (f)** season  
**stanco/a/hi/he** tired  
**stare** to be, to stay  
**stasera** this evening, tonight  
**statua** statue  
**stazione (f)** station  
**stesso/a/i/e** same  
**stomaco** stomach  
**storia** history  
**storia dell'arte** art history  
**strada** road  
**straniero/a/i/e** foreign  
**strano/a/i/e** strange, weird  
**strumento** musical instrument  
**studentessa (f)** student  
**studiare** to study  
**studio** study  
**stupendo/a/i/e** splendid, terrific  
**subito** straight away, immediately  
**succo** juice  
**succo d'arancia** orange juice  
**succo di frutta** fruit juice  
**Sudafrica (m)** South Africa  
**sudafricano/a/i/e** South African  
**Sudan (m)** Sudan  
**sudanese/i** Sudanese  
**sugo** sauce (pasta sauce)  
**suo/a/oi/e** his, her, its, your (formal, singular)  
**suonare** to play  
**suoneria** ringtone  
**supermercato** supermarket  
**surf (m)** surfing  
**svegliarsi** to wake up  
**svelto/a/i/e** quick, fast  
**Svezia** Sweden  
**Svizzera** Switzerland  
**svizzero/a/i/e** Swiss

**t**  
**tanto/a** much, a lot of  
**tanti/e** many  
**tardi** late  
**tartaruga** turtle  
**tastiera** keyboard  
**tasto d'invio** enter key  
**tavolo** table  
**tè (m)** tea  
**tedesco/a/hi/he** German  
**teledramma (m)** television drama  
**telefonare (a)** to telephone (someone)  
**telefonino** mobile phone  
**televisione (f)** television  
**tempo** time; weather; tempo  
**temporale (m)** thunderstorm  
**tennis (m)** tennis  
**terra** Earth, ground  
**terrazzo** balcony, sun deck  
**terzo/a/i/e** third  
**tesoro** (little) darling  
**testa** head  
**timido/a/i/e** shy  
**tirare** to shoot (for goal); to pull  
**tirare vento** to blow wind  
**topo** mouse  
**torace (m)** chest  
**torinare** to return, to come back  
**torrone (m)** nougat  
**torta** cake  
**tra** between, in (time)  
**traffico** traffic  
**tranquillo/a/i/e** calm, quiet  
**tre** three  
**tre dici** thirteen  
**treno** train  
**trenta** thirty  
**tromba** trumpet  
**troppo/i/a/e** too much  
**trovare** to find  
**tu** you (informal, singular)  
**tu/a/oi/e** your (informal, singular)  
**turista (m/f)** tourist  
**tuta sportiva** tracksuit  
**tutti** all, everybody  
**tutto** everything

**U**  
**uccello** bird  
**ufficio postale** post office  
**ultimo/a/i/e** last, latest  
**undici** eleven  
**unico/a/i/he** unique  
**un, uno, un'** a/an  
**uno** one  
**urlare** to shout  
**usare** to use  
**uscire** to go out  
**uscita** logout; exit  
**utile/i** useful

**V**  
**va bene** OK, alright  
**vacanza** holiday, vacation  
**vai!** go!  
**vaniglia** vanilla  
**vaporetto** water-bus

**vaso** vase  
**vecchio/ia/i/e** old  
**vedere** to see  
**vedersi** to see oneself; to see each other  
**vegetariano/a/i/e** vegetarian  
**vela** sailing  
**veloce/i** fast, quick  
**vendere** to sell  
**venerdì (m)** Friday  
**Venezia** Venice  
**venire** to come  
**venti** twenty  
**venticinque** twenty-five  
**ventidue** twenty-two  
**ventinove** twenty-nine  
**ventiquattro** twenty-four  
**ventisei** twenty-six  
**ventisette** twenty-seven  
**ventitré** twenty-three  
**ventotto** twenty-eight  
**ventuno** twenty-one  
**veramente** really  
**verde/i** green  
**verdura** vegetable  
**verità** truth  
**vero/a/i/e** true  
**verso** toward; around (time)  
**vestirsi** to get dressed  
**veterinaria (f)** veterinarian  
**veterinario (m)** veterinarian  
**vetro** glass  
**viaggiare** to travel  
**viaggio/i** journey, trip  
**vicino (a)** near  
**vicino/a/i/e** near, close  
**videogioco** video game  
**Vietnam** Vietnam  
**vietnamita (m/f)** Vietnamese  
**vigile (m)** traffic policeman  
**vincere** to win  
**vincitore (m)** winner  
**vincitrice (f)** winner  
**viola (inv)** purple  
**violinista (m/f)** violinist  
**violino** violin  
**visitare** to visit  
**vita** life  
**voi** you (plural)  
**volare** to fly  
**volere** to want  
**vorrei** I would like  
**volta** time; turn  
**vostro/a/i/e** your (plural)  
**voto** mark (at school)  
**vulcano** volcano

**W**  
**windsurf (m)** windsurfing

**Y**  
**yogurt (m)** yoghurt

**Z**  
**zainetto** small backpack  
**zaino** backpack  
**zampa** paw  
**zero** zero  
**zia** aunt  
**zio** uncle  
**zitto/a/i/e!** be quiet!  
**zucchero** sugar

# English-Italian wordlist

## A

**a/an** un, uno, un'  
**a (little) bit** un po'  
**a lifetime isn't long enough!** non basta una vita!  
**a short distance (from)** a pochi passi (da)  
**about** circa, verso  
**about time** era ora  
**to accept** accettare  
**to accustom (to something)** abituare (a qualcosa)  
**actor** attore (m)  
**actress** attrice (f)  
**to adore** adorare  
**adventure** avventura  
**adventurous** avventuroso/a/i/e  
**aeroplane** aeroplano  
**after** dopo  
**afternoon** pomeriggio  
**again** di nuovo  
**age** età  
**agent** agente (m/f)  
**agile** agile/i  
**agitated** agitato/a/i/e  
**airport** aeroporto  
**all** tutti/e  
**all right then** d'accordo  
**to allow** permettere  
**along** lungo  
**already** già  
**also** anche  
**always** sempre  
**America** America  
**American** americano/a/i/e  
**ancient** antico/a/hi/he  
**and** e  
**and then ...** e poi...  
**animal** animale (m)  
**answer** risposta  
**apartment** appartamento  
**apartment building** palazzo  
**April** aprile  
**aquarium** acquario  
**archaeologist** archeologa (f), archeologo (m)  
**architect** architetta (f), architetto (m)  
**to argue** litigare  
**arm** braccio (m)  
**arms** braccia (f)  
**around** verso; circa  
**arrivals hall/room** sala d'arrivo  
**to arrive** arrivare  
**art history** storia dell'arte  
**artichoke** carciofo  
**artist** artista (m/f)  
**as a matter of fact** infatti  
**to ask** chiedere, domandare  
**at (the)** a, al, alla, all', allo, ai, alle, agli  
**at (time)** alle

**at eleven o'clock** alle undici

**at all** affatto  
**at/to the end** in fondo  
**athletic** atletico/a/i/he  
**athletics** atletica  
**attacker** attaccante (m/f)  
**August** agosto  
**aunt** zia  
**Australia** Australia  
**Australian** australiano/a/i/e  
**Australian Rules football** football (m) australiano  
**Austria** Austria  
**author** autore (m), autrice (f)  
**automatic teller machine (ATM)** bancomat (m)  
**autumn** autunno

## B

**back** schiena  
**backpack** zaino  
**small backpack** zainetto  
**backside** sedere (m)  
**bad** cattivo/a/i/e  
**bakery** panificio  
**balcony** balcone (m), terrazzo  
**ball** palla  
**balloon** palloncino  
**banana** banana  
**band** gruppo  
**bar** bar (m)  
**to bark** abbaiare  
**basketball** basket (m), pallacanestro (f)  
**bathroom** bagno  
**to be** essere, stare  
**to be able to** potere  
**to be afraid of ...** avere paura di...  
**to be born** nascere  
**to be cold (body temperature)** avere freddo  
**to be hot (body temperature)** avere caldo  
**to be hungry** avere fame  
**to be in a hurry** avere fretta  
**to be in a pickle** essere nei guai  
**to be in fashion** essere alla moda  
**to be the latest fashion/trend** sono all'ultima moda  
**to be interested in** interessarsi  
**to be late** essere in ritardo  
**to be missing** mancare  
**to be necessary** essere necessario  
**to be quick** fare presto  
**to be right** avere ragione  
**to be sleepy** avere sonno  
**to be sorry** dispiacersi  
**to be thirsty** avere sete  
**to be worried** preoccuparsi  
**to be wrong** avere torto  
**be quiet!** zitto/a/i/e!  
**beach** spiaggia  
**bead (jewellery)** perlina  
**beak** becco  
**beard** barba  
**beautiful** bello/a/i/e  
**because** perché  
**to become** diventare  
**(bed)room** camera (da letto)  
**to begin** cominciare  
**beginning** inizio  
**Beijing** Pechino  
**Belgium** Belgio  
**to believe** credere  
**beside** accanto (a)  
**better** meglio  
**between** tra  
**(the) best** il/la migliore, i/le migliori  
**bicycle** bicicletta  
**big** grande/i  
**very big** grandissimo/a/i/e  
**bike** bici (f, sing)  
**biology** biologia  
**bird** uccello  
**birth** nascita  
**birthday** compleanno  
**biscuit** biscotto  
**bit** po'  
**black** nero/a/i/e  
**blackboard** lavagna  
**blog** blog (m)  
**blond (hair)** biondo/a/i/e  
**to blow wind** tirare vento  
**blue** blu (inv)  
**boarding (point)** imbarco  
**boat** barca  
**body** corpo  
**bon voyage** buon viaggio, buona vacanza  
**book** libro  
**bookshop** libreria  
**booklet** libretto  
**border** confine (m)  
**boring** noioso/a/i/e  
**bottle** bottiglia  
**boy** ragazzo  
**bracelet** braccialetto  
**brave** coraggioso/a/i/e  
**Brazil** Brasile (m)  
**Brazilian** brasiliano/a/i/e  
**bread** pane (m)  
**bread roll** panino  
**break a leg!** in bocca al lupo!  
**to break down** rompersi  
**breakfast** colazione (f)  
**bridge** ponte (m)  
**broken** rotto/a/i/e  
**brother** fratello  
**brown** castano/a/i/e (hair); marrone/i  
**to brush one's hair** pettinarsi

**budgie** papagallino  
**builder** costruttore (m)  
**bungee jumping** bungee jumping (m)  
**bus** autobus (m), pullman (m)  
**bus stop** fermata (dell'autobus)  
**but** ma, però  
**butcher** macellaia  
**butter** burro  
**to buy** comprare  
**by oneself** da solo

## C

**cake** torta  
**cake shop** pasticceria  
**to call** chiamare  
**to call oneself** chiamarsi  
**calle (narrow Venetian street)** calle (f)  
**calm** tranquillo/a/i/e  
**camp** campeggio  
**canal** canale (m); rio  
**canary** canarino  
**canine** canino/a/i/e  
**canoeing** canottaggio  
**cap** cappellino  
**capital (city)** capitale (f)  
**car** macchina  
**carbon** carbone (m)  
**carbon footprint** impronta ecologica  
**career** carriera  
**careful** attento/a/i/e  
**cat** gatto  
**to catch** prendere  
**cathedral** duomo  
**to celebrate** celebrare, festeggiare  
**ceramic** ceramica  
**cereals** cereali (m, pl)  
**certainly** sicuramente, certo  
**chaperone** accompagnatore (m), accompagnatrice (f)  
**chat** chiacchierata  
**to check** controllare  
**cheeky** birichino/a/i/e; sfacciato/a/i/e  
**chemistry** chimica  
**chest** torace (m)  
**child (little boy/girl)** bambino, bambina  
**Chinese** cinese/i  
**chips** patatine  
**chocolate** cioccolato  
**chocolate (candy)** cioccolatino  
**chocolate-flavoured** al cioccolato  
**choice** scelta  
**church** chiesa  
**cinema** cinema (m)  
**classroom** aula  
**claw** artiglio  
**to clean** lavare  
**clearly** chiaramente  
**to click** cliccare

**to climb** scalare  
**clock** orologio  
**to close** chiudere  
**clothing** abbigliamento  
**clothing store** negozio di abbigliamento  
**clumsy** imbranato/a/i/e  
**coach** allenatore (m), allenatrice (f)  
**coffee** caffè (m)  
**coin** moneta  
**to collect** raccogliere  
**to come** venire  
**come in** avanti  
**come on!** forza!, coraggio!, dai!  
**come on Italy!** forza Italia!  
**comfortable** comodo/a/i/e  
**competition** competizione (f), gara  
**computer** computer (m)  
**computer programmer** programmatore (m) di computer  
**concert** concerto  
**constantly** costantemente  
**to consume** consumare  
**to continue** continuare  
**to contribute** contribuire  
**to cook** cucinare  
**cook** cuoca (f), cuoco (m)  
**cool!** fico!  
**costume** costume (m)  
**country** paese (m)  
**cousin** cugina (f), cugino (m)  
**cream** crema  
**cream flavours** gusti alla crema  
**creamy** cremoso/a/i/e  
**creative** creativo/a/i/e  
**cricket** cricket (m)  
**crispbread** fette (pl) biscottate  
**croissant** cornetto  
**to cross (the road)** attraversare  
**to cry** piangere  
**cultural** culturale/i  
**cup** coppa  
**curly** riccio/ia/i/e  
**customer** cliente (m/f)  
**cute** carino/a/i/e  
**cycling** ciclismo  
**cyclist** ciclista (m/f)

**d**  
**dad** papà  
**damn!** accidenti!  
**dancer** ballerina (f), ballerino (m)  
**dangerous** pericoloso/a/i/e  
**date** appuntamento  
**daughter** figlia  
**day** giorno  
**day after tomorrow** dopodomani  
**December** dicembre  
**to decide** decidere  
**to defend** difendere  
**defender** difensore (m)  
**defence** difesa

**to delete** cancellare  
**delicatessen** salumeria  
**delicious** delizioso/a/i/e  
**Denmark** Danimarca  
**department store** grande magazzino  
**to descend** scendere  
**descent** discesa  
**to describe** descrivere  
**to design** disegnare  
**to desire** desiderare  
**to die** morire  
**difficult** difficile/i  
**to dine** cenare  
**dining room** sala da pranzo  
**dinner** cena  
**direction** direzione (f)  
**disco** discoteca  
**discount** sconto  
**display** mostra  
**DJ** DJ (m/f)  
**to do** fare  
**doctor** medico, dottore (m), dottoressa (f)  
**document** documento  
**dog** cane (m)  
**doll** bambola  
**donation** offerta  
**door** porta  
**to download** scaricare  
**to drink** bere  
**driver** pilota (m/f)  
**drums** batteria  
**duck** anatra  
**dumpling** gnocco  
**during** durante  
**during the holidays** durante le vacanze

**e**  
**ear** orecchio  
**earring** orecchino  
**ears** orecchie (f)  
**early** presto  
**Earth** terra  
**easy** facile/i  
**to eat** mangiare  
**I could eat a horse!** mi mangerei un cavallo!  
**effect** effetto  
**eight** otto  
**eighteen** diciotto  
**eighth** ottavo/a/i/e  
**eighty** ottanta  
**elbow** gomito  
**electricity** elettricità  
**elegant** elegante/i  
**eleven** undici  
**email** email (f)  
**end** fine (f)  
**energy consumption** consumo elettrico  
**engagement ring** anello di fidanzamento  
**England** Inghilterra  
**English** inglese/i  
**to enjoy oneself** divertirsi  
**enjoy your meal!** buon appetito!  
**enough** abbastanza  
**enough!** basta!

**enough for now** basta per ora  
**to enter** entrare  
**enter key** tasto d'invio  
**entrance** ingresso, entrata  
**environment** ambiente (m)  
**environmental** ambientale/i  
**evening** sera  
**everything** tutto  
**everywhere** dappertutto  
**excellent** ottimo/a/i/e  
**excellent idea!** ottima idea!  
**exciting** emozionante/i  
**to excuse** scusare  
**excuse me** scusa (informal), scusi (formal)  
**exercise** esercizio  
**exhaustion of energy resources** esaurimento delle fonti energetiche  
**expensive** costoso/a/i/e, caro/a/i/e  
**they are really expensive** costano un occhio della testa  
**experience** esperienza  
**to explore** esplorare  
**explorer** esploratore (m), esploratrice (f)  
**extreme sports** sport estremi  
**eye** occhio  
**eyes** occhi

**f**  
**fabulous!** favoloso/a/i/e!  
**to fall** cadere  
**to fall asleep** addormentarsi  
**to fall in love** innamorarsi  
**famous** famoso/a/i/e  
**fantastic** fantastico/a/i/the  
**far away** lontano/a/i/e  
**farmer** agricoltore (m)  
**fashion** moda  
**fashion clothing shop** boutique (f)  
**fashion show** sfilata di moda  
**fast** veloce/i  
**father** padre (m)  
**favourite** preferito/a/i/e  
**feather** piuma  
**February** febbraio  
**to feel** sentirsi  
**to feel like ...** avere voglia di...  
**I don't feel like (it)** non mi va  
**to feel sick** stare male  
**fifteen** quindici  
**fifth** quinto/a/i/e  
**fifty** cinquanta  
**film** film (m)  
**comedy films** film comici  
**drama films** film drammatici  
**horror films** film dell'orrore  
**romantic (comedy) films** film romantici

**science-fiction films** film di fantascienza  
**thrillers** film gialli  
**fin** pinna  
**finally!** finalmente!  
**to find** trovare  
**finger** dito (m)  
**fingers** dita (f)  
**to finish** finire  
**finished** finito/a/i/e  
**Finland** Finlandia  
**first** primo/a/i/e  
**fish** pesce (m)  
**fish scale** squama  
**fishing** pesca  
**fishmonger** pescheria  
**five** cinque  
**flavour** gusto  
**Floaties** bracciali  
**floor (of a building)** piano  
**Florentine** fiorentino/a/i/e  
**flute** flauto  
**to fly** volare  
**to follow** seguire  
**food** cibo  
**foot** piede (m)  
**for** per  
**for nothing** per niente  
**foreign** straniero/a/i/e  
**foreign languages** lingue straniere  
**forest** bosco  
**fortunate** fortunato/a/i/e  
**fortunately** fortunatamente  
**forty** quaranta  
**four** quattro  
**fourteen** quattordici  
**fourth** quarto/a/i/e  
**frame** cornice (f)  
**France** Francia  
**free** gratis  
**French** francese/i  
**Friday** venerdì (m)  
**fridge** frigo  
**friend** amico/a  
**friendly** socievole/i  
**frog** rana  
**from (the)** da, dal, dalla, dall', dallo, dai, dalle, dagli  
**from all of us** da parte di tutti noi  
**fruit** frutta  
**fruit and vegetables** frutta e verdura  
**fruit flavours** gusti alla frutta  
**fruit juice** succo di frutta  
**fruits of the forest** frutti di bosco  
**fun** divertente/i  
**funny** comico/a/i/he  
**fur** pelo  
**future** futuro

**g**  
**game** gioco; partita  
**garage** garage (m)  
**garden** giardino  
**gardener** giardiniera (f), giardiniere (m)  
**general store** negozio di (generi) alimentari

**German** tedesco/a/hi/he  
**Germany** Germania  
**to get angry** arrabbiarsi  
**to get bored** annoiarsi  
**to get dressed** vestirsi  
**to get frightened** spaventarsi  
**to get up** alzarsi  
**gift** regalo  
**giftwrap** confezione (m)  
 regalo  
**girl** ragazza  
**to give** dare  
**gladiator** gladiatore (m)  
**glass** vetro  
**glasses** occhiali  
**global warming**  
 riscaldamento globale  
**glove** guanto  
**gnome** gnomo  
**to go** andare  
**to go back** andare  
 indietro  
**to go forward** andare  
 avanti  
**to go out** uscire  
**to go up** salire  
**to go with** accompagnare  
**go!** vai!  
**goal** gol (m)  
**goalkeeper** portiere (m)  
**gold medal** medaglia d'oro  
**gold** golf (m)  
**good** bene; bravo/a/i/e  
**very good** benissimo;  
 bravissimo/a/i/e  
**goodbye (formal)**  
 arriverdela, arriverderci  
**goodbye (informal)** ciao  
**good afternoon** buon  
 pomeriggio  
**good evening** buonasera  
**good marks** bei voti  
**good night** buonanotte  
**grammar** grammatica  
**granddaughter** nipote (f)  
**grandfather** nonno  
**grandmother** nonna  
**grandson** nipote (m)  
**Greece** Grecia  
**Greek** greco/a/i/he  
**green** verde/i  
**greengrocer** fruttivendolo  
**greenhouse effect** effetto  
 serra  
**greeting** saluto  
**grey** grigio/a/i/e  
**group** gruppo  
**guest** ospite (m)  
**guest house** pensione (f)  
**guinea pig** porcellino d'India  
**guitar** chitarra  
**acoustic guitar** chitarra  
 acustica  
**bass guitar** basso  
**electric guitar** chitarra  
 elettrica  
**gym** palestra

## h

**hair** capelli (pl)  
**half** metà  
**ham** prosciutto

**hand** mano (f)  
**in (somebody's) hand** in  
 mano  
**hands** mani (f)  
**handbag** borsetta  
**happy** felice/i, contento/a/i/e  
**hard** duro/a/i/e  
**hat** cappello  
**to have** avere  
**to have a shower** farsi la  
 doccia  
**to have to** dovere  
**hazelnut** nocciola  
**hazelnut-flavoured** alla  
 nocciola  
**he** lui  
**he is a bit crazy** è un po'  
 tocco/pazzo  
**he's cute!** che bello!  
**head** testa  
**headache** mal di testa  
**healthy** sano/a/i/e  
**hello** ciao; buongiorno;  
 pronto (on the phone)  
**to help** aiutare  
**can I help you?** desidera?  
**help** aiuto  
**here** qui  
**here is/are** ecco  
**hero** eroe (m)  
**hi** ciao  
**high school** liceo  
**high school teacher**  
 professore (m),  
 professoressa (f)  
**his** suo/a/oi/e  
**history** storia  
**holiday** festa; vacanza  
**homework** compiti (pl)  
**honey** miele (m)  
**to hope** sperare  
**horse** cavallo  
**hospital** ospedale (m)  
**host family** famiglia che mi  
 ospita  
**hotel** albergo, hotel (m)  
**hotel manager/owner**  
 albergatore (m)  
**hour** ora  
**house** casa  
**how** come  
**how are you?** come sta?  
 (formal); come stai?  
 (informal)  
**how boring!** che barba!  
**how did it go?** com'è  
 andato/a?  
**how do you get to ...?**  
 come si arriva...?  
**how do you spell ...?**  
 come si scrive?  
**how lovely!** che bello!  
**how much?** quanto?  
**how strange!** che strano!  
**how time flies!** come vola  
 il tempo!  
**to hurry up** sbrigarsi  
**to hurt oneself** farsi male  
**husband** marito

## i

**I** io

**I can't wait until ...** non vedo  
 l'ora di (+ inf)...  
**I couldn't care less!** me ne  
 frego!  
**I don't care** non m'importa  
**I don't know** non lo so  
**I lost my temper** non ci ho  
 visto più  
**I need to ...** ho bisogno di...  
**I would like** vorrei  
**I'm mad about him/her/it!**  
 mi piace da morire!  
**I'm starving!** ho una fame  
 da lupo!  
**ice-cream** gelato  
**ice-cream shop** gelateria  
**idea** idea  
**image** immagine (f)  
**important** importante/i  
**in** a (city, village, suburb,  
 landmark or building); in  
 (states, territories, regions,  
 countries or continents)  
**in any case** comunque  
**in front (of)** davanti (a)  
**in my opinion** secondo me  
**in that case** allora  
**in the open (air)**  
 all'aperto  
**in** fra (time)  
**in three days/months**  
**years** fra tre giorni/mesi/  
 anni  
**intelligent** intelligente/i  
**interest** interesse (m)  
**interesting** interessante/i  
**Internet** Internet (m)  
**intersection** incrocio  
**to introduce** presentare  
**to invite** invitare  
**Ireland** Irlanda  
**island** isola  
**it (pronoun)** lo, la  
**it makes my mouth water**  
 mi fa venire l'acquolina  
 in bocca  
**it is necessary**  
 è necessario  
**it is/they are on special**  
 è/sono in offerta  
**it's cold** fa freddo  
**it's disgusting!** fa schifo!  
**it's finger-licking good!**  
 è da leccarsi i baffi!  
**it's hot** fa caldo  
**it's nice weather** fa bel  
 tempo  
**it's raining** piove  
**it's snowing** nevica  
**it's sunny** c'è il sole  
**it's terrible weather** fa  
 brutto tempo  
**it's windy** c'è vento  
**its** suo/a/oi/e  
**Italian** italiano/a/i/e  
**Italy** Italia

## j

**jacket** giacca  
**jam** marmellata  
**January** gennaio  
**Japan** Giappone

**Japanese** giapponese/i  
**jar** barattolo  
**jeans** jeans (m, pl)  
**jewel** gioiello  
**jewellery shop** gioielleria  
**to joke** scherzare  
**joke** scherzo  
**journalist** giornalista (m/f)  
**journey** viaggio  
**juice** succo  
**July** luglio  
**to jump** saltare  
**juniper** ginepro (m)  
**June** giugno  
**just** appena

## k

**kayaking** kayak (m)  
**keyboard** tastiera  
**kilo** chilo  
**kind** simpatico/a/i/he;  
 buono/a/i/e  
**kiss** bacio  
**kitchen** cucina  
**knee** ginocchio (m)  
**knees** ginocchia (f)  
**to know (a fact)** sapere  
**to know (someone or  
 something)** conoscere

## l

**Labour Day** festa del lavoro  
**lake** lago  
**landing** sbarco  
**landscape** paesaggio  
**language** lingua  
**to last** durare  
**last (latest)** ultimo/a/i/e  
**last (past)** scorso/a/i/e  
**late** tardi  
**later** dopo  
**Latin** latino  
**to laugh** ridere  
**laundry** lavanderia  
**lawyer** avvocatessa (f),  
 avvocato (m)  
**lazy** pigro/a/i/e  
**to learn** imparare  
**leather** pelle (f)  
**leather goods shop**  
 pelletteria  
**to leave** partire  
**Lebanese** libanese/i  
**Lebanon** Libano  
**left** sinistra  
**to the left** a sinistra  
**leg** gamba  
**lemon** limone (m)  
**lemonade** limonata  
**Leo (zodiac sign)** Leone (m)  
**less** meno  
**less ... than ...** meno... di/  
 che...  
**lesson** lezione (f)  
**librarian** bibliotecaria (f),  
 bibliotecario (m)  
**life** vita  
**light** luce (f)  
**to like** piacere  
**link** link (m)  
**lip** labbro (m)  
**lips** labbra (f)

**to listen** ascoltare, sentire  
**listener** ascoltatore (m)  
**little** piccolo/a/i/e  
**little brother** fratellino  
**little darling** tesoro  
**to live (somewhere)** abitare  
**living room** soggiorno  
**lizard** lucertola  
**login** accesso, login (m)  
**logout** logout (m), uscita  
**long** lungo/a/hi/he  
**to look** guardare  
**to lose** perdere  
**lounge room** salotto  
**lucky you!** beato/a te!  
**lunch** pranzo  
**Luxembourg** Lussemburgo  
**lyrics** parole

## M

**madam, Mrs (title)** signora  
**magic** magico/a/i/he  
**magic** magico/a/i/he  
**magnificent** magnifico/a/i/he  
**main** principale/i  
**main street** corso  
**main town** capoluogo  
**to make** fare  
**to make a good/bad impression** fare bella/brutta figura  
**to manage (to do)** riuscire (a + inf)  
**many** tantissime/i  
**map** cartina  
**March** marzo  
**margarine** margarina  
**margherita pizza** pizza margherita  
**mark (at school)** voto  
**market stall** bancarella  
**masterpiece** capolavoro  
**mate** compagno

**classmate** compagno di classe  
**mathematics** matematica  
**May** maggio  
**may I?** permesso?  
**maybe** forse  
**me** me, -mi (suffix)

**me too** anche a me  
**mechanic** meccanica (f), meccanico (m)  
**to meet** incontrare, incontrarsi

**we'll meet** ci incontriamo  
**melody** melodia  
**midfielder** centrocampista (m)  
**milk** latte (m)  
**miner** minatore (m)  
**mirror** specchio  
**miss, Miss (title)** signorina  
**mobile phone** cellulare (m), telefonino

**model** indossatore (m), indossatrice (f)  
**modern** moderno/a/i/e  
**moment** momento  
**Monday** lunedì (m)  
**money** soldi (pl)  
**monkey** scimmia  
**month** mese (m)  
**more** più

**more ... than ...** più... di/che...  
**morning** mattina  
**this morning** stamattina  
**mother** madre (f)  
**motocross** motocross (m)  
**motor racing** automobilismo  
**motor scooter** motorino  
**mountain** montagna  
**mountain biking** mountain biking  
**mountain climbing** alpinismo

**mouse** topo  
**mouth** bocca  
**to move forward** avanzare  
**MP3 player** lettore MP3  
**much** molto, tanto  
**very much** moltissimo/a/i/e, tantissimo/a/i/e

**mum** mamma  
**museum** museo  
**mushroom** fungo  
**music** musica  
**classical music** musica classica  
**electronic music** musica elettronica  
**jazz music** musica jazz  
**music artists** artisti  
**music CD** CD di musica  
**music festival** festival di musica

**pop music** musica pop  
**rap music** musica rap  
**musical instrument** strumento  
**musician** musicista (m/f)  
**my** mio/a/ei/e

## N

**name** nome (m)  
**national** nazionale/i  
**natural gas** benzina naturale  
**nature** natura  
**near** vicino, vicino a  
**near here** qui vicino

**neck** collo  
**necklace** collana  
**to need ...** avere bisogno di...  
**nephew** nipote (m)  
**nervous** nervoso/a/i/e  
**netball** netball (m)  
**Netherlands** Paesi Bassi  
**never** non... mai

**never mind** non importa  
**new** nuovo/a/i/e  
**New Zealand** Nuova Zelanda  
**New Zealander** neozelandese/i  
**newspaper** giornale (m)  
**next** prossimo/a/i/e  
**next month** mese (m) prossimo  
**next week** settimana prossima

**Nice (a city in France)** Nizza  
**nickname** soprannome (m)  
**niece** nipote (f)  
**night** notte (f)  
**nine** nove

**nineteen** diciannove  
**ninety** novanta  
**ninth** nono/a/i/e  
**noise** rumore (m)  
**north** nord (m)  
**nose** naso  
**not** non  
**not anyone** non... nessuno  
**not at all** non... per niente  
**not too bad** non c'è male  
**not yet** non... ancora  
**nothing** niente, non... niente  
**nougat** torrone (m)  
**nougat-flavoured** al torrone (m)  
**November** novembre  
**now** adesso  
**number** numero  
**my phone number is ...** il mio numero di telefono è...  
**nurse** infermiera (f), infermiere (m)

## O

**obviously** ovviamente  
**October** ottobre  
**of course!** senz'altro!, come no!, e già!  
**of course not!** macché!  
**often** spesso  
**oh my gosh!** mamma mia!  
**OK** va bene  
**old** vecchio/ia/i/ie  
**older** maggiore/i  
**older brother** fratello maggiore  
**olive** oliva  
**Olympics** giochi olimpici  
**on** su  
**on foot** a piedi  
**on the corner** all'angolo  
**on the other hand** invece

**one** uno  
**one hundred** cento  
**only** solo  
**only (if)** soltanto (se)  
**to open** aprire  
**opening** apertura  
**opposite** di fronte (a)  
**or** o, oppure  
**orange** arancione/i (colour)  
**orange (soft) drink** aranciata  
**orange juice** succo d'arancia  
**organised** organizzato/a/i/e  
**ouch!** ah!  
**our** nostro/a/i/e  
**outdoors** all'aperto  
**owner** padrona

## P

**packet** pacchetto  
**to paint** dipingere  
**papier-mâché** cartapesta  
**parachuting** paracadutismo  
**paragliding** parapendio  
**parent** genitore (m)  
**park** parco  
**parrot** pappagallo

**part** parte (f)  
**is part of** fa parte di  
**party** festa  
**password** password (f)  
**pastime** passatempo  
**patient** paziente/i  
**paw** zampa  
**peach** pesca  
**people** persone (pl)  
**per cent** per cento  
**perfect** perfetto/a/i/e  
**perfume** profumo  
**perfume shop** profumeria  
**petroleum** petrolio  
**pharmacy** farmacia  
**philosophy** filosofia  
**photo(s)** foto (f, sing/pl)  
**photographic camera** macchina fotografica  
**physical education** educazione (f) fisica  
**physics** fisica  
**piano** pianoforte (m)  
**pilot** pilota (m/f)  
**pink** rosa (inv)  
**pistachio** pistacchio  
**pizza restaurant** pizzeria  
**place** posto  
**plane** aereo  
**plate** piatto  
**to play** giocare (a); suonare  
**player** giocatore (m), giocatrice (f)  
**please** per favore  
**pleased to meet you** piacere  
**plumber** idraulica (f), idraulico (m)  
**podcast** podcast (m)

**poor** povero/a/i/e  
**poor thing(s)!** poverino/a/i/e!  
**Pope** Papa (m)  
**popular** popolare/i, seguito/a/i/e

**Portugal** Portogallo  
**post office** ufficio postale  
**potato** patata  
**to prefer** preferire  
**to prepare** preparare  
**to prepare oneself** prepararsi  
**to pretend** fare finta  
**price** prezzo  
**primary school teacher** maestra (f), maestro (m)  
**problem** problema (m)  
**project** progetto  
**protagonist** protagonista (m/f)  
**to protect** difendere  
**psychologist** psicologa (f), psicologo (m)  
**to pull** tirare  
**purple** viola (inv)  
**to put** mettere  
**to put on oneself** mettersi

## Q

**quay** riva  
**quick** svelto/a/i/e  
**quiet** silenzioso/a/i/e, tranquillo/a/i/e

## R

**rabbit** coniglio  
**racquet** racchetta  
**to rain** piovere  
**rarely** raramente  
**to read** leggere  
**really** proprio, veramente, davvero  
**recess** intervallo, ricreazione (f)  
**recipe** ricetta  
**to recycle** riciclare  
**red** rosso/a/i/e  
**regards (in an email)** saluti  
**region** regione (f)  
**regularly** regolarmente  
**religion** religione (f)  
**to remain** rimanere  
**to remember** ricordarsi  
**residence** residenza  
**to respond** rispondere  
**responsibility** responsabilità  
**to rest** riposarsi  
**restaurant** ristorante (m)  
**to return** ritornare, tornare  
**rhythm** ritmo  
**right** destra  
**to the right** a destra  
**ringtone** suoneria  
**risk** rischio  
**river** fiume (m)  
**road** strada  
**robust** robusto/a/i/e  
**rock climbing** arrampicata  
**rock music** musica rock  
**rocket (leaf vegetable)** rucola  
**rodent** roditore (m)  
**Roman** romano  
**romantic** romantico/a/i/he  
**Rome** Roma  
**round** rotondo/a/i/e  
**rugby** rugby (m)  
**ruin** rovina  
**to run** correre  
**to run away** scappare

## S

**safe** salvo/a/i/e  
**sailing** vela  
**same** stesso/a/i/e  
**Samoa** Samoa  
**Samoan** samoano/a/i/e  
**Saturday** sabato  
**sauce (pasta sauce)** sugo  
**sausage** salsiccia  
**to save** salvare  
**saxophone** sassofono  
**to say** dire  
**to say hello** salutare  
**scarf** sciarpa  
**scene** scena  
**schedule** orario  
**school** scuola  
**science** scienze (pl)  
**science high school** liceo scientifico  
**to score** segnare

**sculptor** scultore (m)  
**sea** mare (m)  
**to search** cercare  
**season** stagione (f)  
**second** secondo/a/i/e  
**second (time)** secondo  
**secure** sicuro/a/i/e  
**to see** vedere  
**to see again** rivedere  
**to see each other again** rivedersi  
**to see oneself** vedersi  
**see you** ci vediamo  
**see you later** a dopo, a più tardi  
**see you soon** a presto  
**to seem** sembrare  
**to sell** vendere  
**to send** inviare, mandare  
**to send a SMS to ...** mandare un SMS a...  
**September** settembre  
**serious** serio/a/i/e  
**seven** sette  
**seventeen** diciassette  
**seventh** settimo/a/i/e  
**she** lei  
**she's cute!** che bella!  
**shield** scudo  
**to shine** splendere  
**ship** nave (f)  
**shoe** scarpa  
**shoe shop** negozio di scarpe  
**training/running shoes** scarpe di ginnastica  
**shop** negozio  
**shop assistant** commessa (f), commesso (m)  
**sporting goods shop** negozio di articoli sportivi  
**souvenir shop** negozio di souvenir  
**stationery shop** cartoleria  
**toy shop** negozio di giocattoli  
**shopping** spesa, shopping  
**shopkeeper** commerciante (m/f)  
**short** basso/a/i/e; corto/a/i/e  
**shoulder** spalla  
**to shout** urlare  
**to show** mostrare  
**shy** timido/a/i/e  
**to sing** cantare  
**singer** cantante (m/f)  
**sir, Mr (title)** signore (m)  
**sister** sorella  
**six** sei  
**sixteen** sedici  
**sixth** sesto/a/i/e  
**sixty** sessanta  
**skateboard** skateboard (m)  
**skeleton** scheletro  
**to ski** sciare  
**ski slope** pista  
**skiing** sci (m, sing)  
**skirt** gonna

**sky blue** azzurro/a/i/e  
**to sleep** dormire  
**slice** fetta  
**slice of bread** fetta di pane  
**slide** scivolone (m)  
**slim** magro/a/i/e  
**small** piccolo/a/i/e  
**SMS** SMS (m)  
**snake** serpente (m)  
**so** perciò, dunque  
**soccer** calcio  
**soccer player** calciatore (m)  
**softly** piano  
**something** qualcosa  
**sometimes** qualche volta  
**son** figlio  
**song** canzone (f)  
**soon** fra poco; presto  
**sore** dolorante/i  
**sorry** scusa (informal), scusi (formal)  
**I'm sorry** mi dispiace  
**so-so** così, così  
**South Africa** Sudafrica (m)  
**South African** sudafricano/a/i/e  
**spaghetti** spaghetti (pl)  
**Spain** Spagna  
**Spanish** spagnolo/a/i/e  
**to speak** parlare  
**special** speciale/i  
**to spend** spendere  
**to spend time** passare  
**splendid** splendido/a/i/e, stupendo/a/i/e  
**sporting ground** campo (sportivo)  
**sporty** sportivo/a/i/e  
**spring** primavera  
**squirrel** scoiattolo  
**stadium** stadio  
**staircase** scala  
**station** stazione (f)  
**statue** statua  
**to stay** stare  
**steak** bistecca  
**stepbrother** fratellastro  
**stepfather** patrigno  
**stepmother** matrigna  
**stepsister** sorellastra  
**still** ancora; fermo/a/i/e  
**stomach** stomaco  
**stomach-ache** mal di stomaco  
**to stop** fermare, smettere  
**stop it!** smettila!  
**straight** liscio/ia/i/e; dritto  
**straight away** subito  
**straight ahead** sempre dritto  
**strange** strano/a/i/e  
**strawberry** fragola  
**strawberry-flavoured** alla fragola  
**strict** severo/a/i/e  
**strong** forte/i  
**student** studente (m), studentessa (f)

**to study** studiare  
**study** studio  
**subject** materia; oggetto (of an email)  
**Sudan** Sudan (m)  
**Sudanese** sudanese/i  
**sugar** zucchero  
**summer** estate (f)  
**Sunday** domenica  
**sunglasses** occhiali da sole  
**supermarket** supermercato  
**to surf the Internet** navigare su Internet  
**surfing** surf (m)  
**surname** cognome (m)  
**survey** ricerca  
**Sweden** Svezia  
**sweet** dolce/i  
**to swim** nuotare  
**swim suit** costume (m) da bagno  
**swimmer** nuotatore (m), nuotatrice (f)  
**swimming** nuoto  
**swimming pool** piscina  
**Swiss** svizzero/a/i/e  
**to switch off** spegnere  
**Switzerland** Svizzera

## T

**table** tavolo  
**tail** coda  
**to take** prendere  
**take-away shop** rosticceria  
**to take care** fare attenzione  
**tall** alto/a/i/e  
**tea** tè (m)  
**to teach** insegnare  
**teacher** prof (m/f), insegnante (m/f)  
**team** squadra  
**television** televisione (f)  
**television drama** teledramma (m)  
**to telephone someone** telefonare (a)  
**to tell** dire  
**tell me** mi dica (formal), dimmi (informal)  
**ten** dieci  
**tennis** tennis (m)  
**tenth** decimo/a/i/e  
**thank you** grazie  
**thank you for everything** grazie di tutto  
**thank you very much!** mille grazie!  
**that** quello/a/i/e  
**the** il, lo, la, l'; i, gli, le  
**their** loro  
**them** li, le  
**then** allora  
**there** là; ci  
**there is/are** c'è/ci sono  
**there was** c'era  
**there's no need** non c'è bisogno  
**thing** cosa  
**to think** pensare

**third** terzo/a/i/e  
**thirteen** tredici  
**thirty** trenta  
**this** questo/a/i/e  
**three** tre  
**to throw** gettare  
**thumb** pollice (m)  
**thunderstorm** temporale (m)  
**Thursday** giovedì (m)  
**ticket** biglietto  
**ticket office** biglietteria  
**one-way ticket** biglietto di corsa semplice  
**time** tempo; volta (occasion); ora (by clock)  
**timetable** orario  
**tired** stanco/a/hi/he  
**to** a (city, village, suburb, landmark, or building); in (states/territories, regions, countries or continents)  
**today** oggi  
**together** insieme  
**toilet** gabinetto  
**tomorrow** domani  
**tonight** stasera  
**too** troppo  
**too much** troppo  
**tooth** dente (m)  
**toothache** mal di denti  
**tour** giro  
**Tour of Italy** Giro d'Italia  
**tourist** turista (m/f)  
**town square** piazza  
**tracksuit** tuta sportiva  
**traffic** traffico  
**traffic lights** semaforo  
**traffic policeman** vigile (m)  
**train** treno  
**training** allenamento  
**trampoline** pedana elastica  
**to travel** viaggiare  
**tree** albero  
**true** vero/a/i/e  
**trumpet** tromba  
**truth** verità  
**to try** provare (a + inf), cercare (di + inf)  
**T-shirt** maglietta  
**Tuesday** martedì (m)  
**to turn** girare  
**turntable** piatti (pl)  
**turtle** tartaruga  
**TV/radio presenter** presentatore (m), presentatrice (f)  
**twelve** dodici  
**twenty** venti  
**twenty-eight** ventotto  
**twenty-five** venticinque  
**twenty-four** ventiquattro  
**twenty-nine** ventinove  
**twenty-one** ventuno  
**twenty-seven** ventisette  
**twenty-six** ventisei  
**twenty-three** ventitré  
**twenty-two** ventidue  
**two** due

## U

**umbrella** ombrello  
**umpire** arbitro  
**uncle** zio  
**to understand** capire  
**to undress oneself** spogliarsi  
**unfortunately** purtroppo  
**uniform** divisa  
**unique** unico/a/i/he  
**United Kingdom** Regno Unito  
**unpleasant** antipatico/a/i/he  
**until** fino (a)  
**until tomorrow** fino a domani  
**to upload** fare l'upload, caricare  
**us** noi, ci, -ci (suffix)  
**to use** usare  
**useful** utile/i  
**useless** inutile/i  
**username** nome utente (m)  
**usually** di solito

## V

**vanilla** vaniglia  
**vanilla-flavoured** alla vaniglia  
**vase** vaso  
**vegetable** verdura  
**vegetarian** vegetariano/a/i/e  
**Venetian mask** maschera veneziana  
**Venice** Venezia  
**very** molto  
**veterinarian** veterinaria (f), veterinario (m)  
**video game** videogioco  
**Vietnam** Vietnam (m)  
**Vietnamese** vietnamita (m/f)  
**violin** violino  
**violinist** violinista (m/f)  
**to visit** visitare  
**volcano** vulcano  
**volleyball** pallavolo (f)

## W

**to wait** aspettare  
**waiter** cameriere (m)  
**waitress** cameriera (f)  
**to walk** camminare  
**walk (stroll)** passeggiata  
**to go for a walk** fare una passeggiata  
**to wake up** svegliarsi  
**wallet** portafoglio  
**to want** volere  
**to wash** lavare  
**to wash oneself** lavarsi  
**watch out!** stai attento/a! / state attenti/e!  
**water** acqua  
**water-bus** vaporetto  
**wave** onda  
**wavy** ondulato/a/i/e  
**to wear** portare  
**weather** tempo

**weather forecast** previsioni (f, pl) del tempo  
**web address** indirizzo  
**web page** pagina web  
**website** sito web  
**Wednesday** mercoledì (m)  
**week** settimana  
**welcome** benvenuto/a/i/e  
**well ... (expression)** beh...  
**well** bene  
**well done!** bravo!  
**well then** quindi  
**very well** benissimo  
**westerly** occidentale/i  
**what** che; che cosa, cosa  
**what a crowd!** che folla!  
**what a shame** che peccato  
**what are you doing?** cosa fai?  
**what do you mean!** che cosa dici!  
**what film do you want to see?** che film vuoi vedere?  
**what fun!** bel divertimento!  
**what happened?** cos'è successo?  
**what is/what are?** che cos'è/che cosa sono?  
**what is the problem?** qual è il problema?  
**what is your phone number?** qual è il tuo numero di telefono?  
**what ... of/about?** di cosa...?  
**what time is it?** che ore sono?  
**what will you be when you grow up?** cosa farai da grande?  
**what's the date?** che giorno è?  
**what's the weather like?** che tempo fa?  
**when** quando  
**where** dove  
**where are** dove sono  
**where is** dov'è  
**where is/where can you find ...?** dove si trova...?  
**which** quale/quali  
**which is/which are?** qual è/quali sono?  
**while** mentre  
**whisker** baffo  
**white** bianco/a/hi/he  
**who** chi  
**who is speaking?** chi parla?  
**why?** perché?  
**to win** vincere  
**winner** vincitore (m), vincitrice (f)  
**window** finestra

**windsurfing** windsurf (m)  
**wing** ala  
**winter** inverno  
**with** con  
**with great care** con grande cura  
**within one hundred metres** a cento metri  
**woman** donna  
**wonderful** meraviglioso/a/i/e  
**work** lavoro  
**to work** lavorare, funzionare  
**to work out** allenarsi  
**world** mondo  
**World Cup** coppa del mondo  
**worse** peggiore/i  
**(the) worst** il/la peggiore, i/le peggiori  
**to worry** preoccuparsi  
**don't worry** non preoccuparti  
**to write** scrivere  
**write soon** scrivimi presto  
**writer** scrittore (m), scrittrice (f)

## Y

**year** anno  
**yellow** giallo/a/i/e  
**yesterday** ieri  
**yoghurt** yogurt (m)  
**you** Lei (formal); tu (informal, singular); voi (plural)  
**you can do it!** dai che ce la fai!  
**you need a lifetime** ci vuole una vita  
**you're crazy!** sei pazzo/a!  
**you're early** sei in anticipo  
**you're great!** sei forte!  
**you're joking!** scherzi!  
**you're welcome** prego  
**young** giovane/i  
**your** suo/a/oi/e (formal); tuo/a/oi/e (informal, singular); vostro/a/i/e (plural)  
**yum, yum!** gnam, gnam!

## Z

**zero** zero  
**zodiac sign** segno zodiacale

